Ex Libris

JOHN AND MARTHA DANIELS

£70.

½ Blue

Wageman Delin.

Sam.l Smith Sc.

T. F. SALTER ESQ.R

Published by J. Wicksteed 31 Old Compton Street, Soho Square London.

The Angler's Guide,

Being a Plain & Complete Practical Treatise

ON THE

Art of Angling

For SEA, RIVER, AND POND Fish

DEDUCED FROM MANY YEARS' PRACTICE AND OBSERVATION

To which is added a

TREATISE ON TROLLING

The whole Illustrated with

88. FINE CUTS.

By T. F. SALTER, Esq.r

The Eighth Edition.

With the Authors last Corrections and Additions.

LONDON

PUBLISHED BY JOHN WICKSTEED,

31 Old Compton Street Soho Square

1833.

THE ANGLER'S Guide,

Being a Plain & Complete Practical Treatise ON THE

Art of Angling

For SEA, RIVER, AND POND Fish

DEDUCED FROM MANY YEARS PRACTICE AND OBSERVATION

To which is added a

TREATISE ON TROLLING

The whole Illustrated with

88, FINE CUTS.

By T. F. SALTER, Esq.r

The Eighth Edition,

With the Author's last Corrections and Additions.

LONDON

PUBLISHED BY JOHN WICKSTEED,

31, Old Compton Street, Soho Square.

G.Wicksteed Sculp.t **1833.** 2 Poland S.t Oxford S.t

PREFACE.

In writing this Treatise on Angling, my pen has always been guided by a love of truth, and a sincere desire to improve an Art in which I so much delight;—and the publication of it proceeds wholly from a conviction that a plain practical Guide to the Art of Angling was wanted; for it is of little value to the Learner to be told, that worms are a good bait for Carp, Gudgeon, &c.; or that Roach will take paste, Barbel—greaves; or that Jack and Pike are taken with a Gudgeon, Dace, or other small fish; unless such information be accompanied with clear and practical rules how to bait the hook, at what depth to fish, what sized hook is proper to use, what kind and quality of ground-bait, how to make and cast it in, &c., for, in such minute, but necessary information, most writers on Angling are, I conceive, very deficient. This information is particularly needed by the

Juvenile Sportsman, as the old practitioner is, generally speaking, by no means communicative: I have often witnessed the evasive answers of old Anglers, when applied to on the subject; indeed, it is a very common practice for those who are masters of the Art, to discontinue Angling, and move away, when accosted by strangers or a novice. I have, also, been careful not to introduce any thing resting on mere theory, but to instruct the novice by rules drawn from actual practice and observation; arranged in the most plain and intelligible manner; and I feel highly gratified to find that my endeavours to supply such a work, have been so well received. In this Edition, the whole of the Treatise has been carefully corrected and revised; and much additional information, relative to Angling, has been introduced, as well as many new cuts to illustrate and embellish the subject; and to which is added, the TROLLER'S GUIDE, a new and complete Treatise on Trolling, or the Art of Fishing for Jack and Pike. The only work written expressly on the art of taking Jack and Pike, by Angling, is called the Complete Troller, and was published in the year 1682, by the Rev. R. NOBBS; and, as this healthy and delightful branch of Fishing is followed with avidity, and preferred, by many Anglers, to every other mode of Angling, and the

Art itself having received many improvements since Mr. NOBBS wrote on the subject, it has been suggested to me, that a Treatise on Jack-fishing, written by a modern practical Troller, would be very acceptable to the lovers of Angling in general; and as I cannot agree with the Rev. MOSES BROWNE, or any other writer on this subject, that the Art of Angling had arrived at the highest state of perfection, under the esteemed Father of Anglers, IZAAK WALTON; seeing that that gentleman himself says, in his Preface, that Angling is so like mathematics, that it can never be fully learned, and having had much practice in every method pursued in taking both Jack and Pike with the angle, with the advantage, also, of a residence, for many years, near one of the best rivers in England for Trolling; I have presumed to offer my opinions and instructions, as a guide to those who may be desirous of learning how to take Jack and Pike in a fair, pleasing, and sportsman-like manner; and in order to prevent the possibility of misunderstanding the directions given for baiting the hooks, &c., I have illustrated those directions with cuts; and have, also, endeavoured to convey my instructions in so plain and concise a manner, that the juvenile and inexperienced Troller may clearly and promptly understand them; and I doubt not, if those direc-

tions are assiduously put in practice, the novice may be soon enabled to say,—

> I seldom to the Rivers went,
> But either Jack or Pike I took.

And I, also, flatter myself, that many who have had some practice in the Art of Trolling, will find, in this work, observations on the baits, seasons, and weather, proper for Trolling; how to cast the baited hook in search, and divers other matters connected with, and relative to, Jack and Pike-fishing, worthy their notice and attention.

A man so little accustomed to arrange his ideas for the press as myself, ought, perhaps, to make some apology for the imperfections of his style; but, as my desire has only been to convey plain practical rules in an Art with which I considered myself well acquainted, I trust my readers will pardon the manner for the matter.

> The Angler envies no man's joys,
> But his, who gains the greatest sport;
> With peace, he dwells far from the noise
> And bustling grandeur of a Court.
>
> *Songs of the Chace.*

T. F. SALTER.

CONTENTS.

Page

PREFACE iii
"Angling we will go."—A Song x
Four Plates of Angling Apparatus, Flies, &c. .. to face 1

PART I.

BOTTOM-FISHING.

Chap. 1.—Preliminary Discourse on Angling, the Choice of Tackle, &c. 1
2.—On Rods, Lines, Gut, Hair, and Hooks 5
3.—For baiting the Hook, to take or plumb the Depth, &c 14
4.—Directions how to make every kind of Paste useful in killing or taking Fish, with Observations on Salmon Spawn, Malt, Wheat, and Pearl Barley 18
5.—Ground-Bait, how to make various Sorts .. 24
6.—The Pink or Minnow, &c. 36
7.—The Gudgeon 42
8.—The Perch 47
9.—The Barbel and Chub 59
10.—The Roach 73
11.—The Dace or Dare 81
12.—The Tench and Carp 84
13.—The Trout 97
14.—The Bream, and Bream Dace, Flat, or Red Eye, Pope or Ruff 114
15.—The Eel 122
16.—Directions for fitting, baiting, and laying Night and Chain Lines, for Eels 135
17.—The Fluke, or Flounder, Smelt, Grayling, and Salmon 147
18.—Angling for Salt-water Fish 158

PART II.

TROLLING.

Chap. 1.—Prefatory Remarks on Trolling for Jack or Pike 175
2.—The Gorge-Hook, and how to bait it 178
3.—Single Hooks for Live-bait Fishing; to bait them; with Directions for tying or whipping Hooks to Gimp 182
4.—Snap-fishing; and how to Bait the Hooks .. 190
5.—Trolling Lines, Winch, and Thumb Winders, Bank Runners, Traces, &c. 199
6.—Rods proper for Trolling, or Jack and Pike-fishing, and how to Troll without a Rod 205
7.—Baits for Trolling or Jack-fishing 209

Page

Chap. 8.—The Troller's Day; accompanied with Directions how and where to place the Winch on the Rod—To cast the Baited Gorge-hook—To take Jack or Pike—To land and unhook them, &c. .. 212

9. Full Directions for taking Jack and Pike, with a Live-bait and Floated Line—Proper Kettles, &c. for carrying Live-baits described—Various ways of using Snap-hooks explained—and the most proper Seasons, Weather, &c. for Trolling, pointed out 227

10. Observations on the different ways practised in fishing for Jack and Pike—Also, on Trimmers—Concluding with Remarks on the Nature, &c. of Jack and Pike 240

PART III.

FLY-FISHING.

Chap. 1.—Artificial Fly-fishing, and Fly-making for Trout, Salmon, &c. 258

2.—Directions for making a Golden or Silver Palmer, &c. 270

3.—A list of Palmers, or Hackle-flies, with and without Wings, for Fly-fishing in every month during the Season, beginning with April, &c. 276

4.—List of Artificial Flies, and the way to make them; to kill from Christmas to Michaelmas, &c. .. 280

5.—Natural Fly-fishing, Dapping, Whipping for Trout, &c. 284

6.—Rods and Lines, and how to cast the fly .. 289

APPENDIX.

Directions how to procure Gentles and all sorts of Worms, Cads, Bobs, &c. and to Scouer, Cleanse, and keep them all the year round 295

The New River, the Rivers Lea and Thames, and their Fish and Fisheries described, with maps of the Rivers Thames and Lea 310

The River Lea, Fisheries described from the Rye-house, down to Blackwall 324

The London Angler's Debut, and his superiority in the Art of Angling accounted for; with a brief description of the principal Rivers in Great Britain, and of the Fish they contain 335

Remarks on Angling for every Month in the Year .. 338

Discourse on Pond-fishing, with desultory hints, &c. relative to Angling 344

Laws relative to fishing 357

Treatment of Drowned Persons 360

A Glossary of Technical Terms used among Anglers .. 365

Index 372

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE SEVENTH EDITION.

THE Publisher has much pleasure in laying before the Lovers of Angling, and the Public in general, an Edition of the late MR. SALTER'S ANGLER'S GUIDE, *containing the Author's last Additions, Improvements, and Corrections, from a corrected copy in the Author's own hand-writing, and purchased from one of his Relatives; the whole illustrated with Eighty-eight Cuts, forming the most correct representations of fresh-water Fish ever submitted to the Public; and a new and finely-engraved Portrait of the Author.*

18, *Duke Street, Lincoln's Inn Fields.*

March, 1820.

ANGLING WE WILL GO.

TUNE, "*A Begging we will go.*"

1.

OF all the sports and pastimes
That happen in the year,
To Angling there are none, sure,
That ever can compare.
Then to Angle we will go, &c.

2.

We do not break our legs or arms,
As Huntsmen often do,
For when that we are Angling
No danger can ensue.
Then to Angle, &c.

3.

Cards and dice are courtly games,
Then let them laugh who win,
There's innocence in Angling,
But gaming is a sin.
Then to Angle, &c.

4.

Then you who would be honest,
And to old age attain,
Forsake the City and the Town,
And fill the Angler's train.
Then to Angle, &c.

5.

For health and for diversion
We rise by break of day;
While courtiers, in their downy beds,
Sleep half their time away.
Then to Angle, &c.

6.

And then unto the river
In haste we do repair;
All day in sweet amusement,
We breathe good wholesome air.
Then to Angle, &c.

7.

Our constitution sound is,
Our appetites are keen;
We laugh, and bid defiance
To vapours and the spleen.
Then to Angle, &c.

8.

The gout and stone are often bred
By lolling in a coach;
But Anglers walk, and so remain
As sound as any Roach.
Then to Angle, &c.

9.

The Trout, the Pike, the Salmon,
The Barbel, Carp, and Bream,
Afford good sport, and so the Perch
And Tench will do the same.
Then to Angle, &c.

10.

So let us now remember
To praise the smaller fish;
Bleak, Gudgeon, Roach, and Dace,
Will garnish well a dish.
Then to Angle, &c.

11.

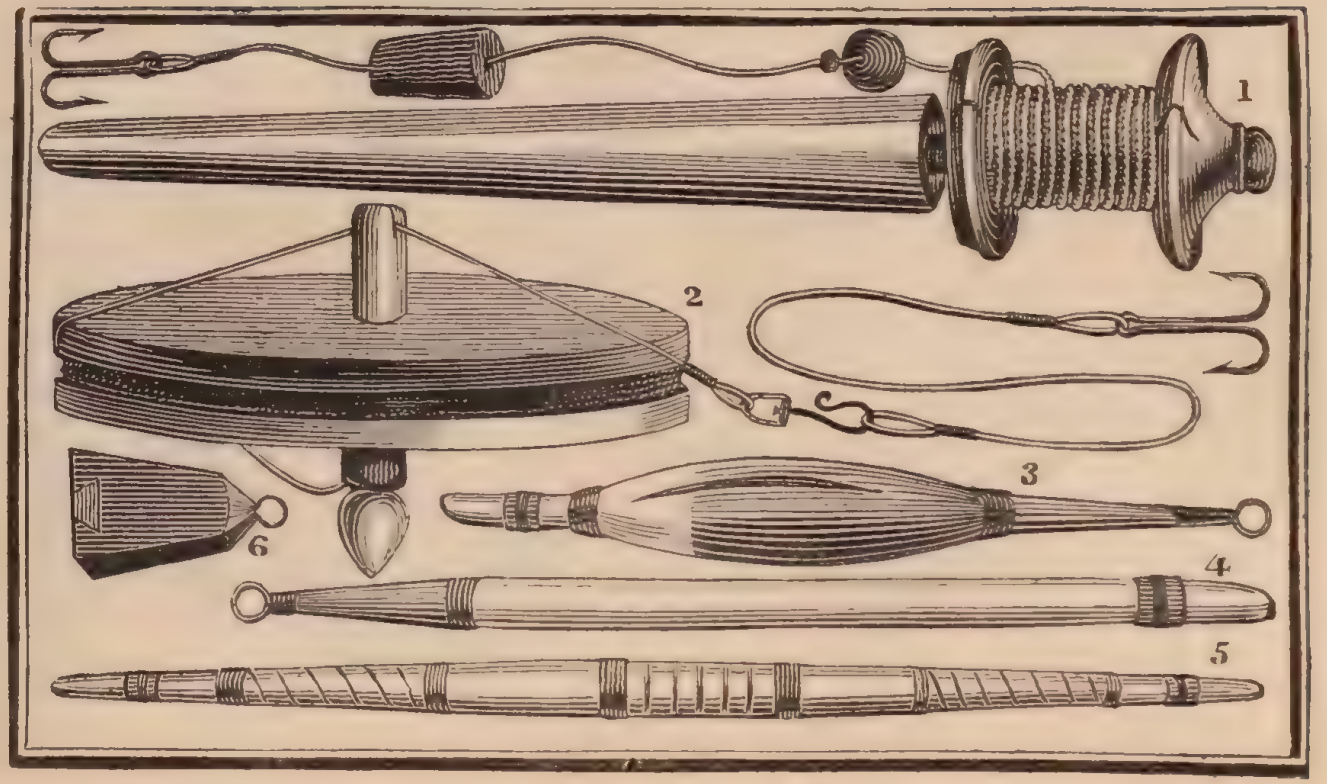
Through meadows, by a river,
From place to place we roam;
And when that we are weary,
We then go jogging home.
Then to Angle, &c.

12.

At night we take a bottle,
We prattle, laugh, and sing;
We drink a health unto our friends,
And so—God bless the King.
Then to Angle, &c.

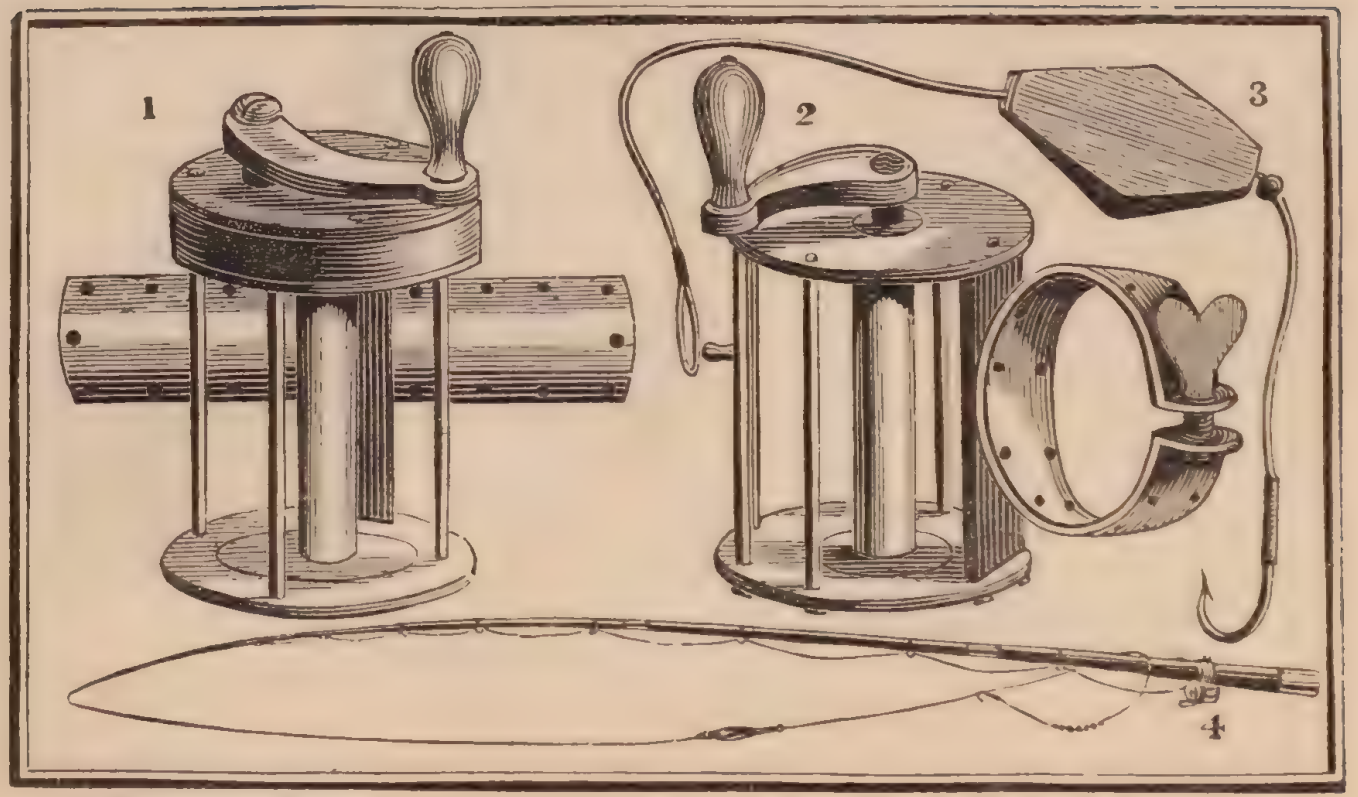
Songs of the Chace.

ANGLING APPARATUS—No. 1.



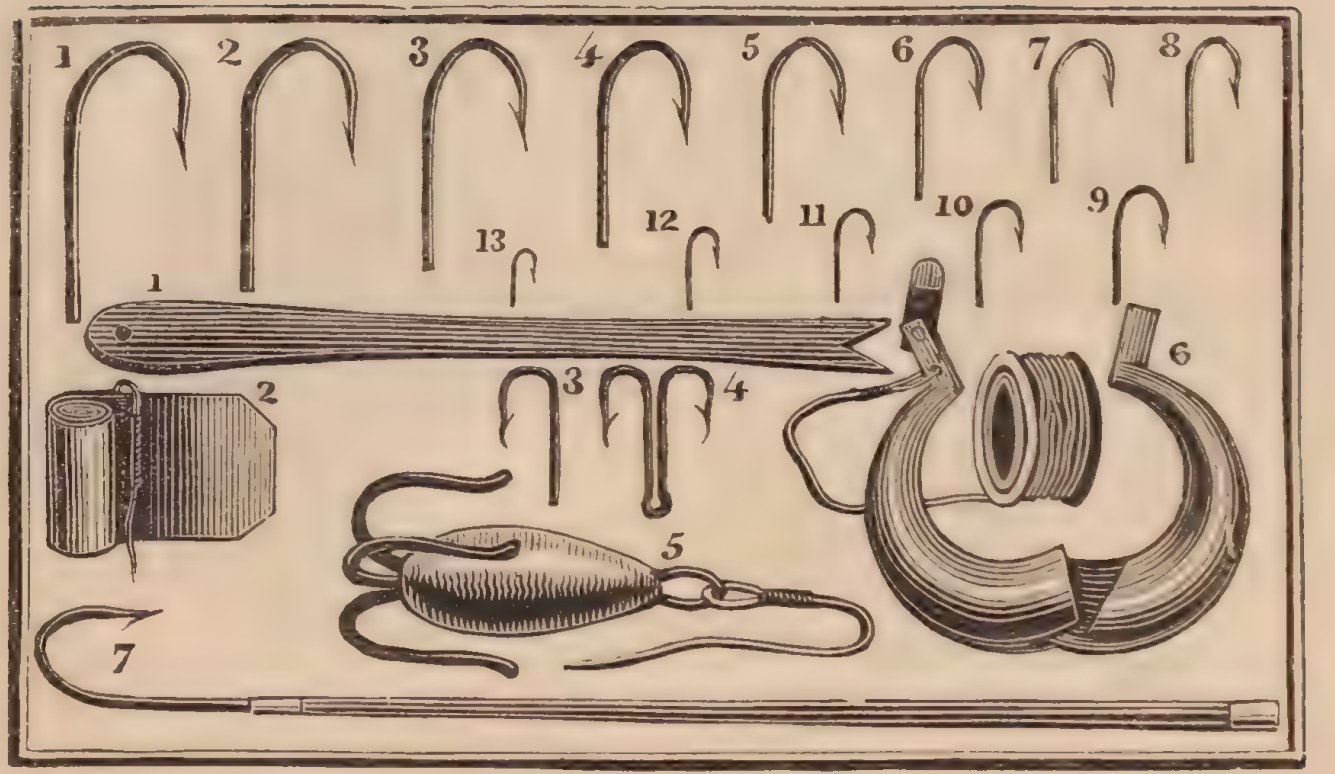
1. Bank runner.
2. Cork or man-of-war trimmer.
3. Cork float.
4. Plug float.
5. Tip-capped float.
6. Plummet to take the depth.

ANGLING APPARATUS—No. 2.



1. Multiplying Winch.
2. Common Winch.
3. Leger Line and Hook.
4. Rod, Winch, Running Line, Float and Hook, for Barbel, Perch, Carp, &c.

ANGLING APPARATUS—No. 3.

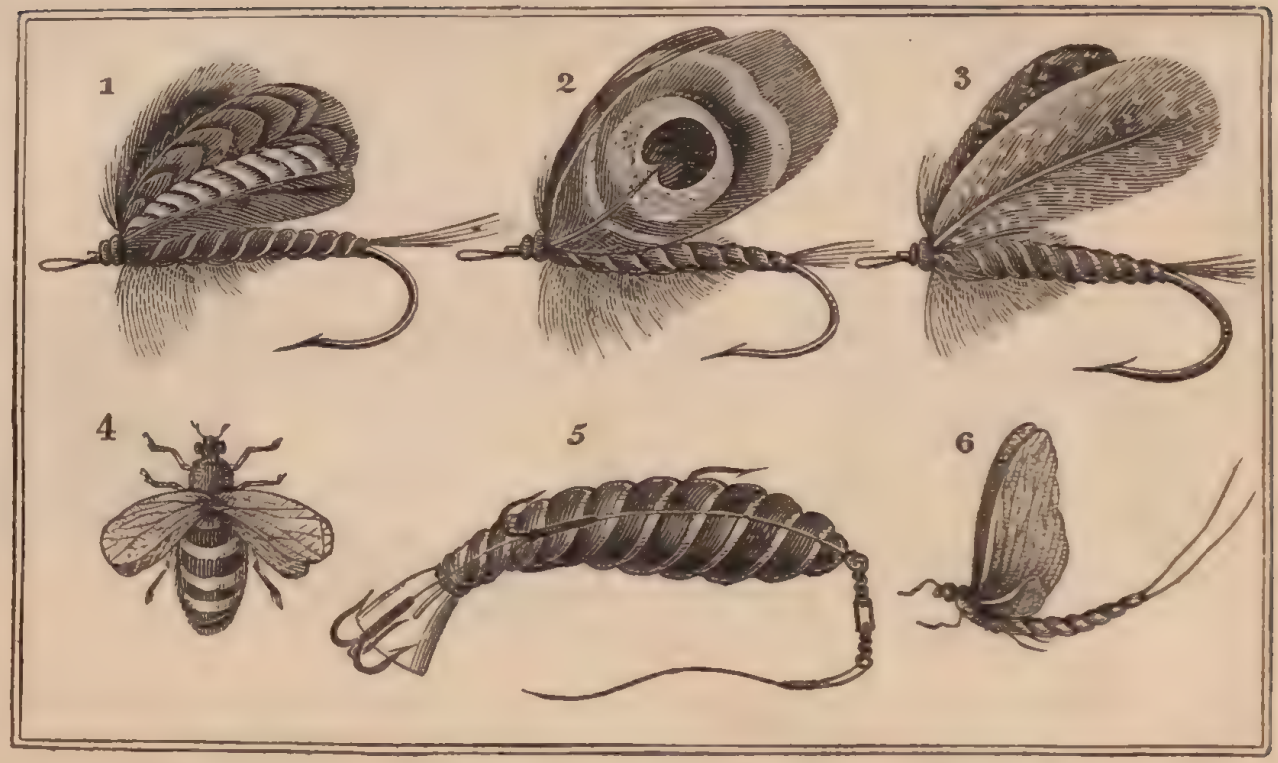


Kirby Hooks.—Sizes from No. 1 to 13.

1. Disgorger.
2. Folding Plummet, to take the depth.

5. Drag Hooks.
6. Brass Clearing Ring, Line and Thumb Winder.
7. Landing Hook and Rod.

FLIES.—No. 4.



Three artificial Salmon Flies.

1. Jay Fly for Salmon.
2. Peacock Fly for Salmon.
3. Silver Pheasant for Salmon.
4. Bee, a natural Bait for a Chub.
5. Devil, an artificial Bait for Trout.
6. A natural May Fly, or Green Drake, a killing Bait in Dapping for Trout.

THE ANGLER'S GUIDE.

CHAP. I.

Preliminary Discourse on Angling.—The Choice of Tackle, &c.

"Hope and Patience support the Fisherman."

NGLING consists in taking or catching Fish with a baited hook fastened to a line, with the assistance of a rod; therefore, the first thing requisite to be done by those who wish to perfect themselves in this amusing and delightful art, is to make themselves acquainted with the necessary tackle, and proper baits, as a preliminary step towards carrying their

wishes into execution. For this reason I shall commence my Treatise on Angling, by pointing out the proper tackle for that purpose, with full directions for choosing the same; also, how to put the rod and line together, to bait the hook, make paste, ground bait, &c. and then give instructions in as plain and concise a manner as possible, how to use the angle so as to insure sport in every week or month during the year. I shall divide the work into three parts, under the denominations of BOTTOM FISHING, TROLLING, or JACK FISHING, and FLY FISHING, with an APPENDIX; first giving a list of such articles that it is necessary the Angler should provide himself with, illustrated with plates and cuts of the same, under the title of "*Angling Apparatus*," it being absolutely necessary that every artist should be furnished with, and made acquainted how to select, and handle his tools, and the materials requisite, before he begins his performance.

The following is a list of articles the Angler should be provided with.

Rods for bottom fishing, trolling, and fly-fishing, lines of gut, hair, &c. lines about three-yards-and-a-half long will be found most useful for bottom fishing, when used as tight lines.

Floats of cork, quill, &c. of various sizes to suit streams, eddies, or still water.

Hooks for trolling—the gorge, snap, &c. tied on gimp; also a landing hook fastened to a handle, or a bamboo telescope rod.

Hooks of various sizes tied on gut.

Hooks tied on hog's bristles.

Winches for running tackle: prefer those which are made to tie on the rod, or to fix in a groove made for the purpose in the butt thereof, as you can fasten such a winch to any sized joint, which you cannot do with those that have a hoop and screw: on the winch you use when angling for Barbel, Chub, Perch, Carp, and Bream, keep from twenty to thirty yards of fine platted silk line, called running line or tackle, which you pass through the rings on the rod, and join with a slip knot to the gut line. In trolling and bottom fishing, the winch should be fastened to the butt of the rod, about ten inches from the bottom thereof; in fly fishing, about half that distance.

Plummets for taking the depth.

Baiting needles for Trout and Jack fishing.

Disgorgers for small Fish and Jack.

Clearing rings.

Drag hooks.

Split shot.

Two or three leger leads.

A pair of pliers, for putting shot on a line.

Caps for floats.

Landing net, fixed to a handle or to fit a rod; another sort described in the Appendix.

Kettle for carrying live bait.

A drum net to keep fish alive in while you are angling.

A pannier or basket, to carry ground-bait, fish, &c. Gentle boxes; and bags for worms; also a large spoon

made of horn, such as grocers use when weighing moist sugar;—for the use of which see Chap. V.

A piece of India rubber;—for the use of which see the Appendix.

Book or case of artificial flies, moths, &c. and materials for making the same; it is also necessary for the Angler to provide himself with a pocket book case, and reel to hold lines, spare pieces of gut, hair, gimp, hooks, &c. Note—always keep a piece of shoemaker's wax on a piece of soft leather, some fine silk for tying on a hook, also some twine, that in case of an accident you may be enabled to mend your rod, &c.;—to do which see Chap. V.

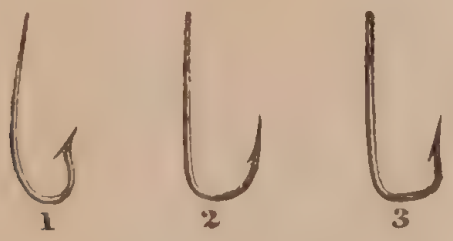
CHAP. II.

On Rods, Lines, Gut, Hair, and Hooks.

As the angle-rod is a material article in the Angler's Catalogue, great care should be taken to procure a good one. The fishing-tackle shops keep a great variety, made of bamboo, cane, hazel, hickery, &c., and of different lengths; some fitted as walking-canes, and others to pack in canvas bags; the latter are to be preferred, because you may have them of any length, and they are made more true, and are stronger; the rods made to pass for walking canes seldom exceed twelve feet, which is, generally speaking, too short; those made of bamboo-cane are best for general fishing, having several tops of various strengths; but the rods made of the white cane are much superior for fine fishing, particularly for Roach, being very light in weight, yet stiff. In choosing a rod, observe that it is perfectly straight when all the joints are put together, and that it gradually tapers from the butt to the top, and is eighteen feet long; if longer, they seldom play true. Some strong and fit for trolling; others for Barbel, Perch, &c.; all of which should have rings on every joint, and some finer for Roach, &c. Rods fitted with several tops, all packing together, are certainly very convenient, when taken on a distant journey; but the Angler who wishes

to have rods neat, and to be depended on, must keep one for trolling, another for Barbel, Perch, or other heavy Fish: and also a fine light cane rod for Roach and small Fish, as well as those for fly-fishing. In the choice of lines, take those that are round and even, and without spots or thick bumps; whether they be made of gut or horse-hair; in choice of gut let it be clear, transparent, round, and smooth, and if you try it between your teeth it will be of a wirey hardness, if good. In respect to colour, the natural colour of the gut is good, but if you wish it dyed, prefer the pale sorrel and light slate: to colour which, take the following directions.—To stain hair or gut of a pale sorrel colour, let it remain a few minutes in a cup of strong coffee, or black tea, boiling hot, and it will have the desired effect. To give the pale slate colour, mix boiling water and black ink together, in equal parts; put the gut or hair in it for one moment, and you have the desired colour; or if you wish to have it of a greyish or water colour, take some boiling water, and dissolve a small quantity of indigo and alum therein, and when the same is cold, dip the hair or gut in it till you see it has acquired the tint you wish. In respect to the choice of hooks, there are five different kinds used in angling; namely, the Kirby, the Kendal, the Sneckbend, the Limerick, and the Eel-hook. The barb of the Kendal-hook is thought too short and too far from the point; the barb of the Limerick is thought too long and rank; the lateral projection of the barb in the Sneckbend-hook is objected to by many; the

Kirby-hook is generally preferred, and I think with reason; Eel-hooks are made stronger and ranker than other hooks: see Angling Apparatus, plate 3.



Limerick. Kendal. Sneckbend.

On Floats.

It is of the greatest consequence that the Angler should be acquainted with the float proper for fishing in different waters, and for various kinds of fish; as more depends upon that part of his tackle than inexperienced or superficial observers imagine. I shall therefore request his attention, while I point out those proper for the purpose.

THE TIP-CAPPED FLOAT.

These floats are made of several pieces of quill; or of reed for the middle, and ivory or tortoiseshell at top and bottom, narrow at each end, gradually increasing in bulk or circumference to the middle: but those which are made thickest above the middle, nearest the top, I find swim the steadiest in blowing weather—

against the stream—in rough eddies—and at the tail of mills: these floats are fastened to the line with a cap at each end. Tip-capped floats are superior to every other for angling in waters which are not very rapid, particularly for Roach fishing; as the least movement or fine bite, sinks it below the surface of the water. The tip-capped float is also best for pond-fishing for Carp and Tench, as it requires but few shot to sink it, consequently disturbs the water but little when cast in, which is of the first consideration when angling for such shy or timid Fish as Carp, Tench, or Chub. *(See Tip-cap Float, plate* 1, *Angling Apparatus.)* Note—The caps which fix the line to the float are often rough at the edge, which chafes and weakens a fine line; therefore, make it a practice to examine and smooth them before you put them to use.

CORK FLOATS

Are generally made of quills at top, with a piece of cork filed or ground smooth, and painted, which is burned or bored through the middle to admit the quill; and then the bottom is plugged with wood, and a ring to let the line pass through. These cork floats are well calculated to fish in heavy and rapid streams, as they require a great many shot to sink them, which weight of shot prevents the baited hook passing too quick over the bottom of the place where you may be fishing; for, with a strong current or stream, and a light float, the baited hook goes over the place you have ground-baited before it reaches the bottom, con-

sequently you lose the greatest chance of success from the bait not sinking quick. Cork floats are made of various sizes and shapes; instead of common quills, some introduce the quill of the porcupine, with a ring at the bottom, which makes an excellent strong float. —Note, some Anglers use a large reed float for heavy and rapid streams; such floats ought to be made with a ring at the bottom, instead of a cap, because in such waters you must strike with great force, and in so doing you generally break the small cap at the bottom of the float, which causes much trouble and loss of time to repair; sometimes both caps are broken, in which case the float swims away, and is lost.

PLUGGED FLOATS.

These kind of floats are the cheapest, and made of indifferent quills, some of them with one goose-quill and a wooden plug at the bottom, from which they take their name: they are very apt to loosen, by the plug coming out. These floats suit the young Angler, from their cheapness, and by being easily put on the line, having a cap at top and a ring at bottom; but the better informed Angler objects to the ring at bottom, because it does not keep the line close to the float, and from the resistance or hinderance it makes in passing through the water, particularly when the Fish bite fine; therefore he always uses the tip-capped float in ponds or rivers, where the stream will admit, in preference to every other.

How to make the Float stand or swim upright, &c.

To make the float stand or swim upright in the water, some shot must be put on the line, as directed in the next article, they are kept, ready split for the purpose, at the tackle-shops. Many small shot are better than a few large, because they disturb the water less in casting in or taking out the bait. To strengthen a quill float, and to prevent the line slipping, after passing the line through the bottom cap, give it two or three twists round the body of the float before you fix the top cap to it.

How to make Gut and Horse-Hair Lines, single and twisted; their different qualities considered.—How to place shot on the same, and fix them to the Rod, try the strength of Hooks, &c.

Fishing-lines are made of gut, twisted horse or cow's hair, and single horse hair; also of silk and mohair, or of silk alone, either twisted or platted: those made of gut are the strongest, the twisted hair cheapest, and the single horse-hair the finest. You may make a fine line, by having half single hair at bottom, the other part two hairs twisted. The gut, or silkworm gut, is made or manufactured from the intestines, or gut of the silkworm, and is the strongest substance for its circumference, known by the Angler, and makes a line superior to any thing else, the natural colour of which is better than much that is stained. The young

Angler will find a line of about four yards in length the most useful, either to fish with or without a winch, as he must note that the line is unmanageable if longer than the rod. In shotting the line to sink the float, place them close together, within three inches of the bottom loop of the line; to which loop fix the loop of the hair or gut that the hook is tied to, and always put one or two shot on them above the middle, which will keep your bait down, and cause the whole to swim steady. However, when you make a line, either of silk, gut, or hair, it always must be finest at bottom, where the hook is fastened, and very gradually increasing in bulk or thickness to the top. When you place shot on the line, do it with a pair of pliers, which is the best and easiest method; some fasten them with their teeth, but it is a bad practice, for they often bite the hair or gut through, which causes much delay and vexation, particularly if it happens while you are fishing.

Many good fish are lost after they have been fairly hooked, by the hook breaking or straightening; therefore make it a rule to try the strength of your hooks before you tie them on or use them, in the following manner:—hold the hook by the shank, and place the other end over a nail or staple that may be driven in a board, wall, or any other place, then pull strong with jirking: if the hook breaks there is an end of the trial, if it bends a little and again recovers its shape, it may be used; but if it bends or nearly draws straight, it should be rejected, for you are as likely to lose a fish

by the hook straightening as by its breaking; a real well-tempered hook will neither bend or break. Small hooks may be tried by holding one between the fore-finger and thumb of each hand by their shanks, and hooking the bended parts together, then pulling and jirking one against the other; also reject every hook that is at all blunt at the point.

Some Anglers tie the line and the length which is fastened to the hook together, with a tight knot, instead of using loops, which is a neat way. Those who choose to twist their own lines, may purchase machines for that purpose, at all the principal fishing-tackle shops, and receive information how to use them.

In respect to the advantages arising from angling with lines made of single horse-hair and hooks tied to the same, over those which are made of fine gut, some difference of opinion exists among Anglers: the advocates for gut say, when it is equally fine, and of the same colour as horse-hair, it is not likely to alarm fish any more than horse-hair, and being much stronger, it certainly deserves the preference. This seems plausible, but I know from practice, that fish may be taken, when angling with a single hair line (especially Roach) that will not touch the bait when offered with a gut line, though the line shall be as fine and of the same colour, &c. as the hair line. To ascertain the fact, I have several times taken off my hair line when Roach have been well on the feed, and put on one of gut, I could then hardly take a fish. Again, I have changed for the hair line, and again had excellent sport, such

has invariably been the case with me and many experienced Anglers of my acquaintance; therefore, I should certainly recommend single hair to those who fish for Roach, Dace, Bleak, and Gudgeons, and assert, without fear of contradiction, they will kill nearly two to one to others who angle with gut, however fine. The only reason I can assign for this difference is, that gut swells and ever retains a shining glossy appearance in the water, and small beads or bladders of water hang around the gut, which increases its bulk while in the water, and probably creates alarm among the fish.

To fasten the Line to the Rod.

Pass the loop of your line through the ring at the extremity of the top joint of your rod, carry it over the ferrule end; then draw your line up to the top again, the loop will then be fast to the ring, and the line will hang from it. You will then put the joints of your rod together, and the rod and line will be complete. Most experienced Anglers keep about six or eight inches of fine silk line tied to the end of the top joint, and fasten the gut or hair line to the said six or eight inches of silk by a draw loop knot; this is an excellent method, because the ring is apt to chafe gut or hair. When you have a winch on your rod to use running line, after the joints are put together, pass the said running line from the winch through every ring on the rod, and pull about a yard of it through the top ring, and fasten it with a draw loop knot to the line which has the float and hook to it.—*See plate of Angling Apparatus, No. 2, Fig. 4.*

Note, when you angle with running line for those fish that it is proper to strike the instant you perceive a bite, make a slip knot in the line, and put in the said knot a piece of thin stick, quill, or tough grass, about an inch long, to prevent the line running back on the rod, which it will do, especially if the wind is any way in your front, and by then hanging slack on the rod, prevents the hook from fixing firmly in the fish you strike. Always keep your winch unlocked, because, in the hurry of the moment, when you have struck a heavy Fish, and the winch is locked, he generally breaks away before you can give line; to prevent such an occurrence, I use only those winches which are made without locks or stops, which are now generally considered the best.

CHAP. III.

For baiting the Hook; to take or plumb the Depth, &c.

Having directed the Angler in the choice of his tackle, to shot the line, and put it together, I shall now proceed to teach him the best method of baiting his hook with worms, &c.

To bait the hook with a worm, use the following method: first, enter the point of the hook close to the top of the worm's head, and carry it carefully down to within a quarter of an inch of its tail, to do which, you

must gently squeeze or work the worm up the hook with your left thumb and finger, while with the right you are gradually working the hook downwards, the small lively piece of the worm at the point of the hook moving about, will entice or attract fish; but note, if too much of the worm hangs loose, though it may entice Fish to nibble, yet they will seldom take the whole in their mouths, so as to enable the Angler to hook them; on the contrary, he is frequently tantalized with a bite, and when he strikes, finds part of the worm gone, the hook bared, and no fish; therefore, to bait a hook well with a worm, is necessary to insure hitting a fish when you strike, and consists in drawing the worm, without injuring it, quite over and up the shank of the hook, leaving only a small lively part of the tail below the point thereof. If you bait with half or a piece of worm, prefer the tail end, and enter the point of the hook into the thick part of it, and bring it down nearly to the end of the tail, leaving only a small piece loose. But if you bait with two worms on a hook, draw the first up above the shank while you put the second on (in the same manner as directed with one worm), but enter the hook near the tail of the second worm, then draw the first one down on the second, the shank, hook and all, will be then well covered, and will be a very enticing bait for Perch, Carp, Chub, Barbel, and all large fish; but when angling for Gudgeon or other small fish, half a red worm is sufficient, and the tail end is best; if blood worms are used, put on two or three, in doing which be very tender, or you will burst

them.—Note, the nature of worms and gentles, with directions for procuring a stock, to breed and keep the same, will be fully treated of and explained in the Appendix.

WITH GENTLES.

To bait a hook with a gentle, use this method: enter the point of the hook into the gentle, near either end, and bring it out at the other end; then draw the point back again just within the gentle, enough to hide it: if you use more than one, pursue the same method: this is the best way to bait with a gentle whose skin is somewhat tough, (especially in cold weather), by piercing the skin in the first instance, with striking fine (when a bite) your hook will enter sufficiently into the Fish and secure it, and you do not risk breaking your line, or the top of the rod, which frequently happens by striking too hard.

WITH GREAVES.

To bait a hook with greaves is as follows: first, select the whitest pieces from what you have soaked, and put four or five pieces on your hook, or as much as will cover it from the bend to and over the point: these pieces should be about half the size of a sixpence, and put on the hook separately or one after the other, not a large piece doubled, as some indolent Anglers do, for then the hook is prevented entering firmly the Fish you strike; whereas, by putting the pieces on separately, when you strike, they either break off, or

are pushed up the shank, and the whole bend of the hook enters the Fish, and you have firm hold. These minutiæ of baiting, &c. are of singular advantage, which the observing Angler will not fail to attend to, and appreciate as being worthy his notice.—Note, it is a bad practice to boil greaves, or soak them in boiling water, for it makes them rotten, and soon fall off the hook; they are certainly much longer in soaking in cold or cool water, but are then much tougher. Some Anglers, when they bait with greaves, always put on a gentle last to cover the point of the hook, and it is no bad way.

To plumb the Depth.

Plumbing the depth is done in the following manner; if a ring plummet, pass the hook through the ring, and fix the point into the cork at the bottom: if a folding plummet, unfold about two inches of it, pass the hook over its side, (as represented in the cut of a folding plummet, in plate No. 3,) and then fold the plummet up again; your hook is then secured from drawing away from the plummet. As success depends much in angling at a proper depth, take due pains, and measure the depth accurately, before you begin fishing. When the plumb lead touches the bottom, and the top of the float is even with the surface of the water, you have the true depth.

CHAP. IV.

PASTES.

Directions how to make every kind of Paste useful in killing or taking Fish, with Observations on Salmon Spawn, Wheat, &c.

Paste is a killing and general bait for almost every kind of Fish that breed in rivers or any fresh waters, but it requires some little time and labour to make it, which must be done with clean hands; also care and skill in using it. Many strange and ridiculous receipts are to be met with for making paste, which tend much to confound and puzzle the inexperienced Angler; such as part of the leg of a kitten, with bees wax, suet, &c. beat up in a mortar; or cherries and cheese, sheep's blood and saffron; or cheese, flour, dead men's fat, aniseed water, and roasted bacon: many others, equally useless and absurd, I could mention; but I shall better serve the novice in angling, by assuring him, that nothing more is wanted in making paste to kill every kind of Fish, which will take paste, than flour-bread, water, and honey, (with a little vermilion or red ochre to colour the paste, which may sometimes be useful), and teaching him how to make and use the same.

Sweet Paste for Carp, Tench, Chub, and Roach.

Take the crumb of a penny roll, or a piece of a loaf the same size, of the first day's baking, and dip it into honey; then work it in your hands, that the honey may be well incorporated with the bread, and until it is of a sufficient consistence to remain on the hook: this is the most killing bait for Carp I ever met with during the months of July and August, and during the rest of the season. Tench, Chub, and Roach, are also very fond of it. I have taken many heavy Roach with this sweet paste, when they refused every other bait; the quantity I have named is enough for a day's fishing, but it is proper to take some to throw in occasionally close to your float while angling. When honey is not to be had, dissolve a sufficient quantity of loaf sugar in warm water, and dip the bread therein; this makes a good, clean, and sweet paste, when well kneaded.

Plain Paste for Roach, &c,

Take a piece of the crumb of a roll or loaf, the day after it is baked, about the size of an apple, and dip it lightly in water; immediately squeeze it as dry as possible, and then place it in your left hand, and, with your thumb and fingers, of the right, work or knead it well, until it becomes exceedingly smooth and stiff: to make this paste to the consistence I have named, it will require to be kneaded a quarter of an hour at least. This paste, when well made, is the best bait for

Roach, as they will seldom refuse it at any time of the year. Carp, Tench, Chub, Dace, Bleak, Barbel, and Minnows, will also take it. This paste is valuable, from its being easily made while you are by the water-side; indeed it is most proper to make it there, especially if you fish at a distance from home, as it may chance to get somewhat sour, by carrying it a length of time; it is further valuable in striking fish when they bite, for, if made properly, it will adhere to the hook until you have struck; it then flies all to pieces, consequently your hook is not impeded in fixing in the Fish, which is material, particularly in angling for Roach, when so small a hook as No. 10, 11, or 12, is used: new bread paste is more glutinous, and adheres too close, which makes it unfit for a small hook. This new bread paste is made by taking a piece of crumb of new-baked bread and a small piece of stale, and kneading it well together in your hands a few minutes (without water), till of a proper consistence: those who prefer ease to sport, make use of the last mentioned paste instead of that made of the second day's bread; and it answers best when angling in strong eddies and very sharp streams. To colour paste, add a little vermilion or red ochre—a very small quantity will make it a pale pink colour, a little more a poppy; but the pale pink or salmon colour is best. If you add a little powdered plaster of Paris to new bread it will make a superior white paste and will be very useful in thick water.

Cheese paste for Chub, and Greaves Paste, &c. for Barbel.

Paste made with cheese and bread is a very killing bait, particularly for Chub, if made in the following manner: take some old Cheshire cheese, the more damp, rotten, and rank, the better, and well work it, and mix it with the crumb of new bread until it becomes of a proper consistence to bait the hook with: if the Angler will go to the expence and trouble of making ground bait of a pound of old maggotty Cheshire cheese and a new quartern loaf, and fish in still chub-holes, he will have sport enough. To make paste for Barbel, dip the crumb of a new penny-loaf into the liquor that greaves have been boiled in, and knead it till stiff and fit for use. This bait is a killing bait for Barbel. When distressed for greaves, I have melted, or, as it is termed, rendered down beef suet, and used the hard pieces or skin which do not dissolve, as a bait both for Barbel and Chub with success.

Observations on Pastes, Salmons' Spawn, and how to make Patent Paste, prepare Wheat, &c.

In making paste, it is absolutely necessary that your hands should be very clean, and likewise the bread and water, otherwise the paste will be of a bad colour and taste—in that case, you must not expect success. A paste is made by mixing water in small quantities with flour, and several times squeezing it dry, forming, in the first instance, a piece of dough; this dough must be worked in the hands through

twenty or more different waters, till it becomes of a consistence almost as sticky as birdlime: when made, carry it in a damp cloth, and you must invariably wet your fingers when baiting your hook, or else fingers, cloth, hook, and all will stick together. This paste is known to experienced Anglers, and preferred solely for its remaining fast to the hook, which it will do in any stream, however rapid. It is distinguished from other pastes by the name of patent paste; but my own experience has quite convinced me that the other kinds which I have described are in every respect superior, and which is also the opinion of the best Anglers I am acquainted with. By using the different sorts of paste which I have enumerated, and for such Fish as I shall direct in their proper places, the Angler may be assured of success, without the aid of oils, scents, or any other quackery. Of late years there has been sold at the fishing tackle shops, in small earthenware pots, a sort of paste called Salmon paste or Spawn, which I believe they receive from the north, but the fish in the southern waters do not seem to like it.

Salmon Spawn, Malt, Wheat, and Pearl Barley.

Real Salmon spawn is described by some writers as a superior bait for Trout, Chub, Roach, Bream, &c. For Trout, in some Rivers, it certainly is the most killing bait that can be used, for a short time. The way to preserve it is as follows, according to old writers: lay it on a board or trencher, and dry it gradually; then put it in a woollen bag, and hang it in a moderate warm dry

place, near the fire or beside the chimney; when it grows too dry, soak it a little in warm water, before you use it; put a piece on your hook something larger than a pea. Salmon spawn is in the best state about two months before the Fish spawn; some preserve it by parboiling and salting it, and then putting the spawn in jars covered with bladder, in the same way as preserves. Before you attempt to preserve Salmon spawn, cleanse it from blood and all impurities.

Among the various methods of preserving Salmon spawn, the following is the best: take one pound of nearly full-grown Salmon spawn, put it into water as hot as you can bear your hands in, and wash off all the skin, &c. from the spawn, then rince it, by pouring cold water on it, taking care that no skin, blood, &c., is left with the spawn, then put it into a cloth or bag, and hang it up to drain for twenty-four hours; then put with it about two ounces of rock or bay salt, to which add about a quarter of an ounce of saltpetre, and hang it up again for twenty-four hours more; then spread it out on a dish to dry in the sun, or before the fire, until it becomes stiff; then put it into a jar, and run melted suet over it, which should be well covered, and fastened with bladder and leather to keep it air light. By preparing Salmon spawn in the way last described, and placing it in a dry cool place, I have preserved it fit for use for two years.

Wheat is a favourite bait with some Anglers on the river Trent, especially near Nottingham: those who chuse to try it must prepare it in the following manner: take some new wheat, and remove the husks from it,

bruise it a little, and then add a little milk or water to it; let it then be put into a slow oven, or parboiled over a slow fire, and, when cold, it will be in a stiff cake, of a substance between glue and jelly; the grain will be the size of a large gentle; put one on the hook in the same manner as if baiting with a gentle. I have killed Roach, Dace, and Bream, with Pearl Barley prepared and used in the same way. Malt prepared and used in the following manner, will be found useful in sharp streams and eddies when angling for Roach, for in such places paste soon washes off the hook: take some fresh large malt, and put it into a pipkin, cover it with water, and gently simmer it until it becomes soft, then remove the husks and skin from the grain, and it is fit for the hook, bait the same as with a gentle.

CHAP. V.

Ground-Bait.

GROUND-BAITING is but little practised by inexperienced Anglers, and is sometimes neglected by the more experienced, from the hurry to begin their sport, or the dislike of the trouble of preparing it: let the neglect arise from what cause it may, little success will attend their efforts in bottom or float fishing without it; for ground-baiting is an essential in this mode of angling, and of singular service if a hole is baited the night before you fish in the morning. I shall therefore

give ample directions how to make and apply every kind useful to promote the Angler's sport, as it is necessary that he should first be acquainted with the means of drawing the fish together, before he attempts to take them. I make it a rule to desist from casting in ground-bait during the last hour of fishing in the evening, if I have been angling some hours, and have cast in plenty, as I then think the fish are already collected about the spot, and, being evening, they are on the feed, especially in the summer season.

Ground-Bait for Roach, Dace, and Bleak.

The most simple ground-bait is made by moulding or working some clay (which is generally met with in the banks of rivers) and bran together, into balls or pieces about the size of a pigeon's egg; some add a little bread crumbled among it. This is good ground-bait for Roach, Carp, and Dace: if you fish in a stream, always put a small stone in each piece before you cast it into the water, to prevent its drifting away. Boiled potatoes, mashed and mixed with bran or barley meal is also a very good ground-bait for Roach and Carp, in still waters.

Ground-Bait made of Bread, Bran, Pollard, &c. for Chub, Carp, Roach, and Dace.

For a day's angling, a quartern loaf is necessary; the crust of which you should cut off, the crumb cut in slices about two inches thick, and put into a pan or some deep vessel, and cover it with water; when the

bread is quite soaked or saturated, squeeze it nearly dry, then add the bran and pollard, by handfuls,—equal quantities of each,—and knead them together, similar to making bread, until the whole is nearly as stiff as clay: in making this ground-bait, it requires some labour and time, but it will amply repay you for the trouble, as it is the best and cleanest ground-bait for Carp, Chub, Roach, and Dace. When I use it for Barbel, in the river Lea, I first break about a quarter of a pound of greaves with a hammer, almost to dust, and soak it well in water, then work it up with the bread, bran, and pollard. In using this bait, you avoid the dirty use of clay, and can also prepare it before you leave home: it may be made by substituting barley-meal for the bran and pollard. This ground-bait should only be used in still water, or gentle eddies and streams, as, from its lightness, it would be carried away in a rapid stream, and, consequently, the Fish would soon disperse in pursuit of it. Parboiled Barley, made into small balls with treacle, is good ground-bait in still waters for Carp and Tench.

Ground-Bait made with Clay, Bran, and Gentles, for Chub, Roach, and Carp.

Mix the bran and clay together in lumps, about the size of an apple; put a dozen or more gentles in the middle, and close the clay lightly over them, similar to making a dumpling: this ground-bait is very enticing to Carp, Roach, and Dace; it is particularly well calculated for baiting in a pond, a still hole, or gentle

eddy, because the clay lies at the bottom, and soon separates: the gentles then gradually work out, which keeps the fish about the hook; and they, doubtless, mistake your bait on it, for those which have escaped from the lumps. Some put worms instead of gentles, leaving some part of their body outside the clay, which is likely to draw Perch, Bream, Eels, and Gudgeon, about the place so baited.

Ground-Bait made with Clay and Greaves, for Barbel.

According to the strength of the stream, proportion the size of the lumps or balls you cast into the water. In the river Thames, when fishing in a punt, for Barbel, the balls must be as large as a turnip, or the current will wash them from the place you intend enticing the Fish to: in the river Lea, pieces of half that size will do. To make this ground-bait, chop or break a pound of greaves into small pieces, and cover it with hot water; let it remain until it softens; pick out a sufficient quantity of the white pieces to bait your hook, and work up the remainder of the greaves and water, with clay, into lumps or balls: I always add bran to it. This is the best ground-bait for Barbel that is used; it is a considerable time before it parts or dissolves, and keeps the Fish to the spot, who rout and push it about with their noses, and occasionally loosen small pieces of the greaves, of which they are immoderately fond; it is also an excellent bait for

Chub, and large Dace; heavy Roach will also feed on greaves.

Gentles and Worms used as Ground-Bait for Carp, Tench, Roach, Dace, &c.

In ponds, and in deep still holes, and eddies in rivers, gentles may be thrown in by handfuls, to entice Fish; but it does not answer in a current or stream, as they then float, and are carried away from the place you intend to angle in: every time you cast gentles in, if you mix them with damp bran and sand you will find it increase your success; as putting the hand among green gentles is very disagreeable, I use a large horn spoon for the purpose, such as is described in page 3.

If you intend using gentles alone for ground-bait, it will be necessary to take two or three quarts for a day's fishing: gentles for this purpose are called carrion gentles, and are sold at most of the tackle shops in London. Worms cut in pieces may be used with the same precaution, in respect to the stream, for ground-bait; if mixed with bran and clay into balls, it will be better.

Malt well soaked in water, as well as fresh grains mixed with blood, are good ground-bait for Carp, Tench, Roach, Bream, Eels, &c. in ponds or still waters, The malt and grains must be quite fresh, for, if they are the least sour, the Fish will not come near them. You may bait your hook with soaked malt or wheat; and, in some waters, it is a good bait for Roach, Bream,

and Chub. This ground-bait should be thrown in the night before you intend to fish; the same method should be observed when you ground-bait with worms: coarse ground-bait may be made with clay, soaked greaves, and oat chaff. Some Anglers prefer this to any other, for Barbel and Chub.

Observations on Ground-Bait.

It is chiefly by the judicious use of ground-bait, and fishing at a proper depth, that one Angler is more successful than another, although fishing with the same baits, &c., and within a few yards of each other; of this I am fully convinced by experience. Ground-bait should not be used the second day after it is made, as it will be sour; and the Fish will certainly avoid it, as every thing partaking of acidity is extremely offensive to the whole finny tribe. Further directions in the choice and use of ground-baits will be given when treating on such Fish as require the aid of ground-bait, to bring and keep them about the place the Angler may have selected for his sport.

To tie on Hooks, make Knots, mend Rods, and wax Silk, &c., for the purpose.

Although I do not recommend the novice in angling to attempt making his own rods, floats, or hooks, yet it is necessary he should be acquainted with the method to tie or whip on a hook; to make proper knots for mending or making a line; also how to mend a broken

rod, in case of accident, when he is pursuing his sport; for which purpose, take the following directions—

First, *To tie on a Hook.* Hold the hook between the thumb and finger of your left hand, and whip round the shank, from the bend of the hook to the top, some fine silk waxed with shoemakers' wax; then lay the hair or gut on it, and whip it over very close with the waxed silk, from the top of the shank till you come opposite the point of the hook; then draw the silk through the loop, which is made by leaving it three turns slack, and cut off the spare silk. Before you tie a hook on to a bristle, always make a knot on the bristle, or the hook will be sure to draw. The *knot* used in making fishing lines is called a water knot, which is made by passing the ends twice over, and then drawing them tight: this knot will never draw or slip. To *wax the fine silk* used in whipping or tying on hooks, requires some care; therefore, take the following directions:—Get a piece of stout leather, such as the upper part of shoes or boots are made of, and lay some shoemakers' wax of the softest sort, smoothly on it; then take three or four lengths of silk together, and draw them over the wax with one hand, keeping the thumb of the other hand lightly pressed on the silk, the waxed leather laying or resting on the finger of the same hand, until the whole is well coated with wax; then take each piece separately, and draw it briskly between a piece of soft leather, by which friction every part of the silk will be equally waxed, and then fit for use; fine silk is not strong enough to be waxed singly; and it is

a saving way, after having waxed several lengths of silk together, and separated them, to fix every one singly with a pin to a cushion, such as are made to screw on the edge of a work-table; those cushions are to be bought at any toy-shop. Twine may be waxed in single threads, the same way as practised by shoemakers.

How to use the Drag-Hooks, Clearing Ring, and Disgorger.

The *drag* is a piece of iron or lead, with three or four stout wire hooks without barbs, *(See Angling Apparatus, Plate No. 3, Fig. 5,)* placed back to back, to which is fastened a long fine cord line; this is used to draw away weeds that a heavy fish may have got himself or the line among, also to recover any part of the tackle that may be entangled in weeds, or to drag in night-lines, cork-trimmers, &c.

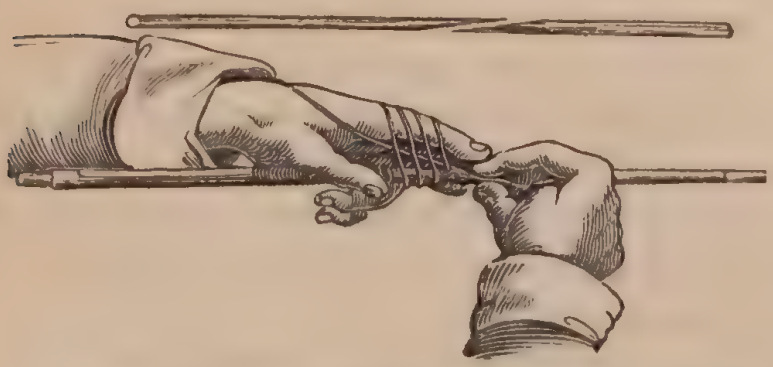
The *clearing-line* is made of several yards of strong small cord, to the end of which is fastened a heavy ring of lead or brass; *(See Plate No. 3, of Angling Apparatus, Fig. 6;)* if the hook should get fast to a heavy weed, post, or any thing else, this ring is put over the rod, and suffered to go down to the hook; hold the rod in your right hand, the top pointing downwards; and the clearing line in your left, letting the ring fall on the hook, and it will free it from what it may have stuck into; if not, hold the rod tight, and draw the line sideways, and break away; in this case, the Angler seldom loses more than a hook, if he acts as above

directed; but without the assistance of a clearing ring, he frequently loses his float as well as hook and line, and breaks his top joint. The brass clearing rings are to be preferred, because they are jointed, and, in consequence, can be used when the Angler has a winch on his rod, in which case, the leaden ring could not be passed over the winch. These useful articles to the Angler, are to be met with at the fishing-tackle shops.

The *disgorger* is an instrument with a forked top, about six inches long, made of bone, iron, or brass: *(See Plate 3 of Angling Apparatus, Fig. 1;)* when a Fish has swallowed the hook, the forked end of the disgorger is thrust down upon it with one hand, while you hold the line tight with the other, which disengages the hook, and permits it to be easily drawn out. This is the safest way to unhook a Fish that has gorged the bait, or got the hook fixed in its throat; because, by using violence with the thumb and finger, you sometimes break a fine or small hook, either at the point, barb, or shank, which causes loss of time, and much vexation, in having another hook to put on, to plumb the depth again, &c., which is all absolutely necessary to be done, or you may as well give over fishing. But when the Fish is hooked through the lip, the Angler has only to hold the Fish steadily in one hand, while with the other he carefully takes away the hook. When a large Fish has gorged your hook, and you are alone, the best way to act then is, first, to fix a small piece of stick from the upper jaw to the lower

to keep his mouth open, which enables you very easily, with the aid of a disgorger, to remove the hook.

Mending a broken Rod.



If you should have the misfortune to break your rod, while fishing, repair it in the following manner: cut the broken ends with a slope *(see the cut)*, so that they may lay smooth and close together; then bind them together with some strong silk or twine, waxed with shoemaker's wax, or you may use wax-ends, such as coblers mend shoes with; begin to bind the fractured parts together, about two inches above the middle thereof, making the laps about a quarter of an inch apart, and continue so to bind two inches below the middle of the fracture; then whip or bind back again to the part at which you began; now bind or whip down again, keeping the lappings close together, until you come within four or five turns of the two inches below the middle of the fracture; then lay the fore-finger of your left hand over the rod, *(see the cut)*; and with your right hand, make four or five bows or hoops over the finger of your left hand, with the silk, or whatever you are mending the rod with,

and pass the end of it between the under side of your left hand finger and the rod *(see the cut)*; now draw away, gradually, your left hand finger, and, with your right hand finger and thumb, take hold of the second from the top of the bows or hoops, and draw it tight, which will make the first bow or hoop lay close and secure over the broken rod; then draw the third, which will secure the second, and so on till all lays smooth and close to the last turn, to fasten and fix which, take the end of the waxed silk or twine, which lays under the bows or hoops just described, and draw it upwards, till all lays smooth and tight; then cut off the spare part, and all will be fast and strong. This way of mending and fastening off, without tying, is called the hidden or invisible knot. If you mend a broken rod at home, spread a little softened shoemaker's wax on each slope of the broken rod, or glue them together, before you bind these sloping parts together, and it will increase the security of the broken parts; after which, varnish the whipping, and lay them to dry, which will soon take place, if good drying varnish is used. When you have occasion to mend a small joint of a rod, then a bodkin or a disgorger should be used, instead of the left hand finger, because the bodkin or disgorger doth not require that the bow or hooped whipping should be so large as if passed over the finger, and consequently are, with less difficulty, drawn and confined to their proper places; when the bodkin or disgorger is used, you pass the waxed silk or twine through the eye of either of those instruments, which

enables you to draw from under those bows or hoops before described.

This is the best way I can describe or direct the Angler how to repair a broken rod, which I have illustrated by a cut; for, when at a distance from home, &c. he should be prepared to remedy such an accident.

For further information, I would recommend him to ask an experienced Angler, or his tackle maker, to shew him how to tie on a hook, to hair, gut, or gimp; and how to mend a broken rod, which may be communicated to him in much less time than I have consumed in writing on the subject. The facility with which the Angler, who resides in the metropolis, can get his tackle fitted or repaired, makes him indifferent about the matter; but those who cannot avail themselves of such assistance, should certainly make themselves acquainted with the method of doing it.

Having concluded my directions on the choice of tackle, and how to put it together, to bait the hook, take or plumb the depth, to make various kinds of paste, and ground-bait, &c. &c.; I shall now proceed to teach the Angler to apply such information successfully in angling, beginning with that part termed Bottom or Float Fishing, being the most ancient mode of angling on record.

> In genial spring, beneath the quiv'ring shade,
> Where cooling vapours breathe along the mead,
> The patient fisher takes his silent stand,
> Intent, his angle trembling in his hand.—Pope.

CHAP. VI.

BOTTOM FISHING.

THE PINK OR MINNOW.

MINNOWS are very numerous in the Thames, Lea, and New Rivers. They are very small Fish, and little valued by the Angler, excepting as bait for Trout, Perch, or Chub; the Minnow bites very freely at a blood worm, a small piece of red worm, gentles, or paste; the tackle should be very light, and a No. 13 hook, baited with a small worm, or rather a piece of worm; they are taken all day, from March till winter, on the gravelly shallows or swims; also at the mouth of ditches that fall into rivers, and at mill-tails: strike the moment you see a bite.

REMARKS ON MINNOWS.

In size, the Minnow is the smallest of the Carp species, and seldom exceeds three inches; being a hand-

some Fish in shape and colour, when quite in season. The back is of a dark colour; the sides, of a golden hue, much like the Tench; and the belly white: some are spotted on the body with red spots, and variegated with blue and yellow. Minnows differ a good deal in point of colour, in different waters, and are generally called pinks, in the north, when they have red spots on them. They spawn in April. Minnows do not feed in the night, fearing to stir at that season, as their great enemies, the Trout and Perch, are in search of them in preference to any other food: neither does the Minnow love cold boisterous weather: it is then a loss of time to angle for them. They are said to eat well, if fried, when made into cakes with crumbs of bread and eggs.

The Bleak or Bley.

Bleak are found in the rivers Thames and Lea, and the New River, in immense numbers. They are a handsome Fish, but do not grow to a large size, seldom exceeding two ounces in weight. They are a lively

sportive Fish, and easily taken with a small fly at the top of the water, by whipping or dapping, and with paste or gentles, at mid-water, or at the bottom. Angle for them with a light rod, single hair line, and small quill float. They will bite all day from March till Winter, affording the young Angler sport and practice, and may be caught in all parts of the New River, from Sadler's Wells to Ware. A handful of road dust, or small gravel, a few gentles, crumbs of bread, or chewed bread thrown in the water, where the stream does not run too quick, now and then for ground bait, will bring the Bleak about your bait; strike immediately you see a bite.

Remarks on Bleak.

The Bleak is of the Carp species, and, in shape, a handsome formed Fish, with a bright green back, and brilliant silvery scales on the sides, and has a fine large eye, altogether much like a fresh-caught Sprat: they spawn about the middle of March, but sooner recover themselves than any other Fish. The Bleak is not much prized at table, from their small size, and tasting somewhat bitter, which happens, however, only in the Summer months. In Spring and Autumn, many persons who like small Fish fried, think the Bleak well tasted, and prefer them to Roach or Dace. In Summer, Bleak are sometimes much distressed by an insect called a hair worm; they then swim on the surface of the water, being unable to descend; and when in such condition, they are called, by fishermen, Mad Bleak.

A single gentle, put on a No. 12 or 13 hook, hair

line, and very small float, and angling about a foot below the surface of the water, is the best way for killing numerous small Bleak. When you use a fly, let it be a live house-fly, which is more killing than artificial flies; if artificial, a black gnat fly.—Note: Where Bleak are large, use a No. 11 hook, and fish at the depth of two feet.

Prussian or Crucian Carp.

This Fish is not very common in England. By some persons it is supposed to be a cross breed, between the Carp and Roach, as it favours both in appearance, the scales being like Roach, and the head resembling the Carp; it is a poor bony Fish; the flesh soft and insipid: they seldom exceed a pound in weight. They are very prolific, for which reason they are useful in ponds, as food for the Jack and Pike: large Eels are also fond of them; you may bait trimmers, night-lines, and hooks with the Crucians, to lay in ponds, moats, pits, or canals, with some success, when you cannot get Roach, Dace, or Gudgeon; but I never found them a good bait in a river. These Fish breed, and are very numerous, in many ponds round London; they begin to feed in April, and continue until Michaelmas. You may take them either with a blood worm, or a red worm, gentles, or paste, being a hungry bold-biting Fish, and they will take a bait at almost any time of the day: use a gut or horse-hair line, small quill float, with a No. 10 or 11 hook, and fish at or near the bottom. Chewed bread is good ground-bait for Crucian or Prussian Carp: they

will sometimes take the bait on the surface of the water, or a few inches below, between, or just hanging over weeds. When you see or feel a bite, strike immediately. Angling for Crucian Carp is well adapted for the young Angler to practise himself with, preparatory to more noble game.

Remarks on the Prussian or Crucian Carp.

The Prussian or Crucian Carp, naturalists say, were introduced into this country about a hundred years since, from Prussia or the North of Germany, where they are very numerous. They differ very much from the common Carp, being much flatter and thinner in the body; their scales are also more of a silvery than a golden hue, and they want the barbs or wattles at the nose, which all common Carp have; they breed and thrive wonderfully, in new-made pits, from whence gravel has been dug; or in ponds with gravelly sides or bottom, but seldom grow heavier than one pound. These Carp will live a long time in a glass bowl, or globe, and look very beautiful, many of them having double tails: frequently change the water, which must be river or pond water, for they soon die if put in hard spring water.

Loach, or Stone Loach.

This is a very small Fish, having a round dark body, covered with very small scales, with six wattles or barbs

at its mouth, and several teeth in its jaws: it seldom exceeds four or five inches in length, and, in colour, mouth, head, and fins, somewhat resembles the Gudgeon. I have heard they are a delicious Fish when fried in batter, or with egg and crumbs of bread; but there is some difficulty in catching a dish of them, being scarce as well as small. The Stone Loach is an excellent, indeed a most killing bait for large Eels, when used on night-lines; they are generally to be found in small gravelly brooks and rivulets.—I have sometimes taken a few in the river Lea, in the shallows, near mill-tails; they lie at the bottom, routing the gravel, the same as Barbel. You may take them with the tail-end of a red worm, and a small hook, during the warm weather, with or without a float to your line, using a shot or two to sink the bait. The Stone Loach is a killing bait for large Perch, if used alive, and, when dead, it is also a good bait for Eels on night lines.

The Prickleback, or Strickleback,

Is the smallest of the finny tribe, and is sometimes used as a bait in fishing for Perch: in this case you must cut off the prickly fin from the back. They are caught in all ditches round London, as well as in most parts of the kingdom, with a small piece of worm, either with or without a hook: a small piece of worm tied to a yard of thread, and that fastened to a stick, is sufficient for the purpose. The Prickleback, which receives its name from the sharp spines or prickles on its back, seldom grows to the length of two inches, and is short-

lived, but is a very bold and voracious Fish, attacking Roach and Dace, twice its size, and destroying very small Fish, and spawn of Fish. It breeds very fast, producing immense numbers; therefore, those who have Fish-ponds, should take great care the Prickleback gets not a habitation therein. Pricklebacks are frequently used, in Lincolnshire, for manure, being always very numerous in the fens; but sometimes, they become so numerous as to make it necessary to separate and find new situations, which happens once in eight years, upon an average; during which migration, part of the river Welland is almost choked with them, at which time they are collected in nets, sieves, baskets, &c., to the amount of cart loads, and spread on the land as manure, and, I am informed, fertilize it extremely. Pricklebacks are also found in the sea.

CHAP. VII.

The Gudgeon.

The Gudgeon is a firm, well-flavoured Fish, and much prized at the table, when large and fresh caught, especially before they cast their spawn: the rivers Thames and Lea boast of very fine, and immense

numbers of them.—They are a bold-biting Fish, and afford much amusement to the young Angler, by their being easily taken. Gudgeons will take a bait from March till October, at any time of the day. In the Thames they are generally fished for in a boat, with red worms for bait, a cane or hazel rod, gut or a twisted hair line, light cork or stout quill float, and No. 10 hook; some put two hooks on their line, one about a foot above the other. Writers on the Natural History of Fish say, that Gudgeons spawn two or three times in the year, but I believe only once, and that happens at different periods, in different waters. As, for instance, Gudgeons arrive in the river Lea, and go a few miles up it, from the Thames, in the Spring, and spawn in May, but the native Gudgeons of the Lea do not spawn till after Midsummer, which leads to the mistake above alluded to; however, be that as it may, I know that Gudgeons are in the best state for the table in the Spring, or from March and April to May, for at this season, their chief food is small worms, and the spawn of other Fish, which they find among the small gravel they rout up on the shallows; but, as the weeds grow up, Gudgeons leave the shallows after spawning, and feed a good deal on the weeds, which make their flesh less firm, and, in Summer, their flesh is rather of a bitter taste, or else tasteless; they also then, generally, either burst or stink within a few hours after they are taken out of the water, or during the carrying home, especially in extreme hot weather. Though Gudgeons in the hot Summer months, are a very indifferent Fish for the table, and

not worth their carriage, yet before their spawning in the Spring, they are (in my opinion) the best small Fish excepting the Smelt, that the fresh waters produce. They should be cooked in a frying-pan immediately, or a few hours after they are caught, and without being scaled or opened; for, at this season, Gudgeons feed so clean, that there is nothing in their stomachs to offend; therefore, they require only wiping with a damp cloth, the same as is usual with Sprats; for, by opening and washing, you spoil them. Many lovers of this Fish, who reside in or near the Metropolis, subscribe to the Fisheries on the River Lea, for the sole purpose of a few months' Angling for Gudgeons. These Anglers for Gudgeons in the river Lea use very fine tackle, fish from the bank of the river, and also take much pains to get a dish of these delicious Fish. The best Anglers prepare to commence Gudgeon-fishing in this river at the middle or latter end of March, with a light cane rod, a single hair line, tip-capped float, and the hook a No. 10 or 11, made of the finest wire. Shot the line with small shots, so that about a quarter of an inch only of the float appears above water, and strike immediately you perceive a bite; but before you begin fishing, it is necessary to disturb the ground which you intend angling on, with a rake (an iron instrument so called, fastened to a long pole) as, by thus loosening the gravelly sand, you uncover various small worms and insects, and the Gudgeons immediately repair to the spot to feed on them, as do small Perch, which are frequently caught while angling for

Gudgeons. The best place to fish for Gudgeons is in gentle eddies and sharps, where the bottom is clean and gravelly, or sandy, and from three to six feet deep, and the stream or current running pretty sharp; plumb the depth before you begin fishing, and let the baited hook gently drag on the ground: when the fish leave off biting, ply your rake, and, occasionally, try another swim, as before observed. Some Anglers have two hooks on their line, when Gudgeon fishing, but I have found, in fishing with one, that I generally kill more in a day's angling than those who use two, besides having less trouble. Blood worms are the most killing bait in the Spring, but, towards the end of the Summer, Gudgeons prefer a red worm, they will also take gentles. When baiting the hook with blood worms, put two on the hook, in doing which you must be very careful not to squeeze them, or they burst to pieces; when you use red worms, put only the half of one on your hook, and that should be the tail end of the worm. If you are without a rake, very frequently cast in a handful of gravel or road sand about where you are angling, which will keep the Gudgeons about the spot. When angling for Gudgeons with a whole or half a red worm, enter the point of your hook at the top or upper part of the worm, and carry it down very near to the end of the tail, leaving as little as possible loose, or they will nibble at the loose piece instead of taking the whole in their mouths, in which case you may have plenty of bites, but kill no Fish. In Flanders, it is the general practice to angle for Gudgeons with a small piece of

raw sheep's liver, for a bait, which Gudgeons take freely; when I speak of angling in Flanders, I mean in the waters around the city of Ghent.

Remarks on Gudgeons.

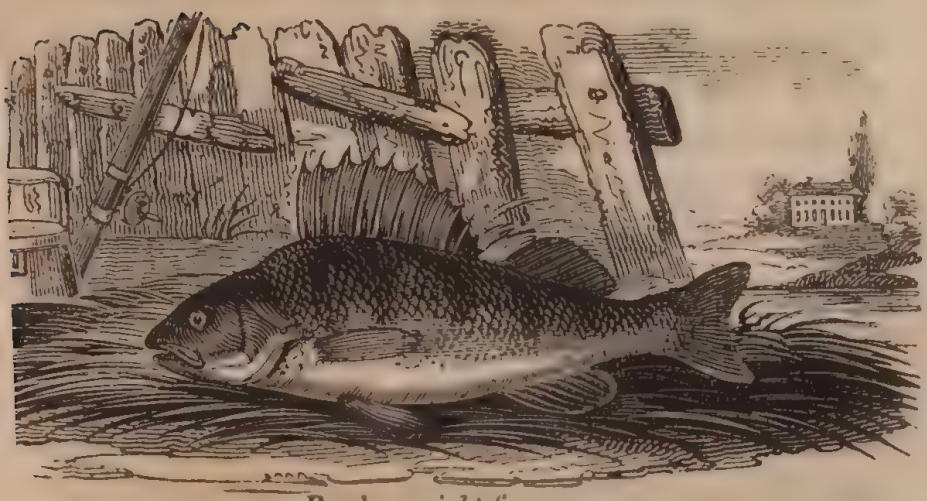
The Gudgeon is a handsome lively Fish, of the Carp species, the body long and covered with small scales, the back a dusky dark colour, the belly a dusky white, and somewhat of a purple hue, the dorsal or back fin and the tail are of a light brown, waved or spotted with darker brown; at the mouth hang two barbs or wattles, like those of the Carp. Gudgeons are seldom taken of more than eight or nine inches in length, or weighing more than four ounces: I have never heard of any being taken that weighed half a pound.

The New River, and the Canals near London, abound with Gudgeons, and they are also to be met with in most rivers in England, but are not so large in any that I have seen as those caught in the Thames and Lea, nor are they so numerous. I have frequently taken fifty dozen in the course of a day's angling, in the river Thames, which number is very seldom taken in the river Lea, during a day's fishing; yet the Lea Angler has the best of Gudgeon fishing, because he may take them before they cast their spawn, whereas the Angler who fishes in the river Thames is prohibited bottom-fishing, from the first of March until the first of June, in all the water which is under the conservance of the City of London, which extends somewhat beyond Staines Bridge. The largest Gudgeons that are caught in the

Perch.—Weight three pounds.

river Lea are in those parts nearest London, when they are coming from the Thames into the Lea, to cast their spawn. The Gudgeon is a gregarious Fish, and may be seen, in Summer, at the bottom of clear rivers, in herds of hundreds together; but they are very susceptible of cold, and retire as soon as the Winter commences, and lie close together in the warmest and deepest parts of the river, from which they do not move until Spring. During the Winter, they will very seldom take a bait. Gudgeons will live and breed in ponds that have clean, gravelly bottoms, especially if a small stream runs through them.

CHAP. VIII.



Perch—weight four ounces.

The Perch.

"The bright-eyed Perch, with fins of Tyrian dye."

THE Perch, when upwards of a pound weight, is a noble looking Fish, and its flesh is reckoned firm and

nutritious, being excelled by none of the fresh water tribe. Perch are a bold Fish, and the small ones especially; they generally take a bait immediately it is offered; therefore, strong tackle may be used in angling for them, and the easiest way of fitting it is as follows. Put a cork float, on a gut, silk, or twisted hair line, and a No. 7 hook; and use a tolerable strong top to your rod: bait with a well scoured worm, either marsh, brandling, or the red. Early in Spring, I prefer putting two red worms on my hook, instead of one of the other kind, especially when the water is very bright or shallow. Live Shrimps (or, if dead, and very fresh) are a killing bait for Perch, particularly in wet docks, where the tide flows strong in, which brings with it numerous Shrimps, on which every Fish found in those places will feed, the large Perch especially. Angle from the wharfing and shelving banks, and also about the ships which have laid some time in dock. Perch are also caught with a live Minnow, Stone Loach, small Bleak, Dace, or Gudgeon, or a small live frog, hooked by the lips or back; but live Minnows and Shrimps are most to be depended upon for killing heavy Perch: use the same hook, line, and float as before directed. When fishing for Perch, especially in rivers, you should always have a winch and running tackle on your rod; and hook on your bait-fish, the same way as described in Chap. III. Part II., for sometimes a Jack, Pike, Trout, or Chub, will take your bait; then it is necessary to give line, or the Fish will break away, from being too suddenly checked when going to their haunt: it is likewise necessary to give them a few moments to

pouch, if you suspect a heavy Fish; and as they often run a considerable distance before they do this, without running tackle you certainly would break, or lose your Fish. When you are fishing where the Perch are all small, and you have a bite with a worm-bait, let him run about the length of a yard or two, and then strike smartly: place the float on the line so that the bait may swim or hang about a foot above the bottom of the water. Some angle for Perch with two baited hooks on a line, one of them placed so as to hang or swim near the bottom of the water, the other to swim or hang at mid-water, which is a good way in the Spring months, for the water is then generally thick and high, and the Perch will then swim at all depths, and also very often close in shore. I have killed several Perch and Chub with a small frog hooked by the lips, but I have only used a frog for a bait when I could not procure live Minnows or Shrimps, as I by no means consider it equal to either of them, as well as being troublesome subjects to travel with, and to keep alive, or to get a sufficient number of. Some Anglers, when fishing for Perch, use two hooks to a live Bleak or Minnow, one being tied about an inch above the other; they then fix one to the bait's gills or lip, and the other under the back fin, but I prefer one hook to a bait, with a line fitted as follows:—

When I fish for heavy Perch with a floated line, and bait with live Minnows or Shrimps, I fit it up in the following manner. The float should be a cork one, and of a tolerable large size; the line of choice twisted

gut from four to six yards long. The hooks I attach to the line are from one to three; and of size No. 6.; the bottom hook I tie to about nine or ten inches of twisted gut, then loop it to the line above this; about eighteen inches higher up the line, I place another, which I tie to about three inches-and-a-half of bristle: if bristle cannot be got, I then use the strongest gut: then take a leaden pellet, which is a piece of lead pipe with a hole through it, about half an inch long, and in circumference something larger than the stem of a tobacco-pipe, (these leaden pellets may be purchased at all the principal Fishing-Tackle Shops,) and make a small groove all round the middle of it; after which put the other end of the bristle, to which the hook is tied, forming a loop, and whip the same very secure, I then pass my line through the pellet down to within eighteen inches of the bottom hook; and in order to keep it from slipping up or down, I place a small shot above and below it on the line, and eighteen inches above this I place another hook tied on bristle, exactly in the same manner as just described, and my Perch line, with the addition of a float, is thus complete, unless a shot or two may be wanted to sink the float. The reason I tie the hooks, which are placed high up the line, to a bristle is, that if tied to gut, it soon gets softened and limp in the water, and then hangs about and round the line, whereas the bristle remains hard, and projects or stands out from the line, and, when fixed to the pellets, with the movements of the live bait keeps twirling and spinning around, but clear of

the line, consequently more likely to be seen by the Perch. The Angler will take care, when placing the shot on the line, to prevent the pellet slipping up or down, that he so fixes them as not to prevent the pellet from revolving round the line, or he will destroy great part of the advantage I have experienced by this mode of fitting my tackle for Perch fishing over the common method.—Some Anglers, when Perch fishing in very deep water, say from sixteen to twenty feet, use four or five hooks on a line, but I have always found three quite enough in the deepest water, and in shallower I sometimes use only one or two, because, though it is well known that Perch swim at all depths, yet I have, by many years' experience, found that I kill two to one on the bottom hook to what I do with the hook tied the highest up the line; therefore I make it a rule so to place the float, as to let my bottom hook nearly touch the ground, but, ever and anon, rise it and sink it, and draw it a little to this side or that, or nearer shore, &c. until I get a bite. In ponds and other still waters, when it is calm, if you throw into the water, occasionally, a few handfuls of loose sand or gravel, it will often move the Perch to feed; but when it is a mild breezy day, and if accompanied with light showers, the Perch are then on the rove, and will take a bait in good earnest; if there be neither wind nor rain, your only chance to find Perch on the feed, is to be after them early in the morning, and again towards nightfall or evening.

When live Minnows, or any other small Fish, are used for baits, the Angler should frequently change the water in the kettle, and take the bait out with a

very small net, similar to those used in removing Gold and Silver Fish, only of a smaller mesh; or if it is made of coarse gauze, it will do, because, putting a hot hand in the kettle distresses and alarms the baits, and frequently is the cause of several of them dying, which is generally an irreparable loss for the day, therefore of the first consequence to provide against. If you put live Shrimps among damp sandy gravel, they will keep longer alive than if put in water; and also remember, that by carrying Shrimps and damp sand in a wicker basket, they receive some air, and will live longer than if packed together in a bag, or carried in a fish-kettle: if you cannot conveniently get gravelly sand, take a good wisp of straw, hay, or weeds well wetted; put it in your basket, and put the Shrimps among it, and they will remain alive a long time, especially if you keep it damp, by occasionally wetting or partly immersing the basket in water.

Roving, Sinking, and Drawing for Perch.

When the Angler is favoured with a breeze of wind, and the water a little coloured, and having failed getting sport with his floated line, let him try his luck by roving and dipping, or sinking and drawing for Perch with worms, in the following manner: take a No. 6 or 7 hook tied to about nine inches of strong single gut, twisted hair or gut, or very fine gimp, and bait it with two well scoured red worms, in the following manner: —enter the point of the hook in the first worm, at the head, and carry it down to and out of the tail; draw it up over the shank of the hook on to the line: while you

place the second worm on the hook, enter the point of the hook in this second worm a little below the tail, and carry it up within a quarter of an inch of its head; then draw the first worm back again on your hook, close to the second, when the shanks and all parts of the hook will be covered, and the bait complete;—I have generally found more sport in the spring by baiting this way with two small red worms than putting on one large marsh or a brandling worm;—put about three shot, nine inches above the hook, to sink it:—fasten this gut or hair, to which the hook is tied, to a fine trolling line that is fixed to a winch on a rod with rings; draw out as much line as you can manage to cast in, holding the rod in one hand, and the slack line between the winch, and the first ring on the rod in the other, when you cast away your baited hook, let the line slip gently away from the hand which held it. By a little practice you will be enabled to cast your bait with precision to any particular spot you wish; and if the wind is at your back, and the stream or water not very broad, throw to the opposite side, and let your bait drop from the bank gently into the water, and sink, then gradually rise it to the surface, and so act, raising and falling it, till you bring the bait near the side on which you stand: if the river is too broad, cast into the middle, and when you feel a bite do not check it, but let the fish run a yard or two before you strike—this is called roving, because the bait is cast far and near, and the Angler is continually moving from one place to another. Dipping, or sinking and drawing for Perch, is

dropping the bait in holes, eddies, behind and among weeds, between and among roots and branches of trees; also close to banks, wharfings, piles, and about bridges and locks in canals; let it sink nearly to the bottom, then draw up gradually: let it sink again; and so on till a bite is felt, when you must act as directed in roving: use the same tackle, and bait the hook the same way; this mode of angling is also to be preferred when the water is very bright; for, at such times, the float alarms the Fish (Perch and Trout especially) and frightens them away; the only difference between the two methods, is in having more line out, and casting the bait further from you, while roving, than in dipping. In Summer, during very warm weather, I have sometimes had more sport by putting on my hook three or four gentles, than with worms, and drawing them along just below the surface of the water, especially in ponds and still waters; and I have found a grub, of a dusky white colour, to be a good bait for Perch, in ponds and still waters, in the heat of Summer; and also an insect found in some running waters or ditches, much like a small Shrimp; some Anglers call it the fresh-water Shrimp. The grub I have alluded to, is found sometimes when you are digging for worms, and about the roots of cabbages, and under half-dried cow-dung in grass fields, or on commons; this grub has no legs. Perch are also sometimes angled for by roving or trolling with a live Fish or Frog for a bait, with tackle fitted for Trout Fishing, therefore a full description will be given of that mode of Angling, when treating on Trout Fishing.

Perch Angling commences in February, and continues till the cold weather or Winter comes on; for, after November, nay, sometimes even in cold Octobers, the Angler had better desist from searching for Perch, until the ensuing February. Dark windy weather, if not too cold, or blowing a gale from South-West, is best for Perch Fishing; they will then feed all day, but more freely in the morning, and especially about an hour or two before dark in the evening. In the middle of the day, Perch seldom move after food, unless it is in docks or tide rivers during the flow and ebb, when Perch, as well as other Fish in such places, will feed at all hours; but in other waters, during warm weather, the Angler will seldom see Perch move until the day begins to decline; then the quiet Fisher for Roach is often disturbed by Perch coming into his swim to feed, making the white Fish fly in every direction, and spoiling his sport. Now put in a baited hook for the intruder, and you may perchance take him.

Perch delight to lie about bridges, and mill-pools, in and near locks, about shipping, barges, and rafts of timbers in navigable rivers and canals, and at the entrance and in wet docks, also in deep and dark still holes, and in all bending and still parts of rivers, and in the back water of mill-streams, as well as in deep gentle eddies, in ponds about sluices and the mouth of outlets and flood-gates, on the gravel or sandy parts of the pond, and near the sides where rushes grow. You need not wait long in a place; for if there are any Perch about, and they are inclined to feed, they will soon take the bait; and if you meet with several brace

of them in a still hole, and they are well on the feed, with care, you may often take them all; for, if not disturbed or alarmed, by letting one fall off your hook, they will, one after the other, take the bait almost immediately it settles in the water. Give plenty of time when you have a bite, that the Fish may gorge before you strike, for more Perch are lost by the Angler striking too soon, when he perceives a bite, than by breaking the tackle after they are fairly hooked; it is, therefore, of the greatest consequence, that the Angler, when fishing for Perch where he has reason to think he shall meet with some heavy ones, keep cool and collected when he perceives a bite, giving the Perch two or three moments to gorge the bait before he strikes, because he has then an opportunity of fixing the hook securely in the Perch's pouch or stomach, from which place it will never draw; but if you strike too soon, that is, while the baited hook is only in the mouth, (and you should bear in mind what a spacious mouth a large Perch has, and how likely it is you pull away the baited hook without touching any part of the said mouth,) and if you do fix the hook in the roof, or the side of the mouth, recollect how tender and brittle that part of the Perch is, and how frequently, by his plunging and struggling, the hook tears away from such a tender or insecure hold, and when this does not occur, the hole which the hook has made soon becomes enlarged. While you are playing a heavy Perch, and if he then unfortunately gets round or among strong weeds, the line will become slack about the mouth of the Fish, and the hook comes or draws away from its hold. If you Fish for Perch in waters that contain

Jack, and Pike, always have your hook tied to fine gimp.

Perch abound most in deep, dark, and sluggish rivers, and in such rivers they are to be found in most parts thereof; but in rivers, whose currents run strong and fast, search for Perch particularly in the bends and still parts thereof, especially if such places are near a scouer or sharp, where white Fish are always to be met with.—Note, when angling in those bends or turnings of a river, or in still holes or places laying under the wind, it is proper to keep gently moving or drawing your float a little to the right or left, or to lift it out of the water a few inches occasionally, and let it gently drop in again, as this way of acting frequently inclines Fish (Jacks and Perch especially) to seize the bait, fearing it is moving away from them, though they have seen the bait stationary, but not being much on the feed, would not take the trouble of moving for it, till it seemed likely to make its escape. When you have hooked a heavy Perch, play him until he is quite spent, before you attempt to land him, fearing he may be slightly hooked; by thus acting, the reader will see he not only secures a large Perch, but very probably may, by such care and skilful way of angling, fill his basket with them, and they are a Fish worth all the trouble attending the taking, either for the Angler's own table, or for making a present of: and also further note, that when Perch are well on the feed, and you should be distressed for baits, you may bait your hook with the eye of those you have taken, or the eye of any other Fish, and Perch will freely take it, and so will Smelts.—Note,

some Anglers hook the Minnow through the upper part of the tail instead of the back fin or lip; when this is done, you must give the Fish more time to gorge, or you have little chance of securing him.

Remarks on Perch, &c.

The Perch in shape is thick and broad, very high at the upper end of the back, and as they grow larger they generally become much hog-backed; they have a fine eye, small head, and a very large mouth, teeth in their jaws, and also in their throat; the tail and belly fins are of a bright orange or vermilion colour. The large dorsal fin is very strong and spinous, which it erects when alarmed, especially if a Jack or Pike approaches him, who generally retire if they find the Perch on his guard, and of a formidable size, though somewhat reluctant or leisurely. The back and upper part of the sides of Perch are of a dark green colour, some parts darker in waves or thick irregular stripes towards the belly, which is a yellowish white. The back and sides of Perch are covered so thick with small scales as to form as strong a covering almost as a coat of mail, and when full grown, have a very bold and formidable appearance; they spawn in March. Perch are gregarious, and, contrary to the nature of fresh-water Fish that swim in shoals, will sometimes attack and devour their own species; they are slow of growth, and seldom exceed three or four pounds in weight: but Pennant writes, that an extraordinary large one was taken out of the Serpentine River, in Hyde Park, a few years since, which weighed nine pounds.

CHAP. IX.

A large Barbel, Tench, and Roach.

The Barbel.

. . . . . With hurried steps
The anxious Angler paces on, nor looks aside,
Lest some brother of the angle, ere he arrives,
Possess his favourite swim.*

THE Barbel is of the Carp species, and derives its name from the barbs or wattles at its mouth, which are four in number, of a fleshy leather substance; they

* The partiality for a particular swim, hole, or eddy in a river, is very great among Anglers; many will travel during the night to arrive first at a favourite place. I knew an Angler who frequently, in Summer, leaving London in the evening, and stopping at a village public-house near the river Lea, would take his supper and pipe; remain there until the people of the house retired to bed, then walk to his favourite swim, sit down, and wait patiently till the dawn of day enabled him to use his angle rod.

are gregarious, and what Anglers term, a leather-mouthed Fish. Barbel only breed and thrive in large tide-rivers. In the Thames and part of the river Lea there are many, very fine and large: I knew of one taken at Shepperton, weighing nineteen pounds ten ounces; they are a very handsome Fish, but their flesh is coarse, and therefore considered but of little value for the table; yet I have been told, by several persons, that they eat very well, especially when baked, with veal stuffing in their belly, as do the smaller ones split and fried in batter, or with slices of pickled pork or bacon; but the spawn of Barbel is not fit for food, as it generally acts as a strong cathartic, and frequently as an emetic. The Barbel is prized for being a game Fish, affording excellent sport to the Angler, mixed with some labour and much anxiety: for when of a large size, they are exceedingly crafty, sulky, and strong, struggling a long time after they are hooked, often lying motionless at the bottom for some minutes, then running under banks, or shelves, into large beds of weeds, in fact, trying every possible way to get off the hook, or break your line, which they certainly will effect if you are deficient in skill, or your tackle is in any respect faulty.

The proper Tackle and Baits described.

Barbel are usually angled for on the river Thames in boats, called punts, with a stout rod, a winch, and running

tackle, gut line, cork float, and No. 7 or 8 hook; likewise with the leger line, which is fitted in the following manner: a short solid rod, a winch, and about thirty yards of strong running tackle, without a float, with hook No. 6 or 7 tied on twisted gut, baited with a well-scoured lob, a large marsh worm, or with a piece of white greaves. About ten inches above the hook is placed a piece of flat lead, perforated, (sold at the tackle shops) below which is fixed a large shot, to prevent the lead slipping down; the tackle-makers generally put an ivory pellet instead of a shot, which looks very neat: fasten this leger with a slip loop knot to the running line, the bait is then cast in and lies clear on the ground; *(See Plate of Angling Apparatus, No. 2, fig. 3.)*—hold the top of your rod over the side of the boat, nearly touching the water, till you feel a bite, keeping the line free; and when you feel the Fish pull, or tug, strike hard; but most good Anglers prefer using a single gut line and a No. 9 hook, with a float, and a light bamboo rod, a winch, and fine running line; as killing a Barbel, with such tackle, affords much greater sport, and you also frequently catch large Roach and Dace whilst thus trying for Barbel. When so angling for Barbel, the running line should be about twenty yards long, of fine platted silk, which is preferable to silk and hair, or twisted silk or India twist, because it is stronger, when of the same size, and not so liable to kink or tangle.

In the river Lea, they generally fish with much finer

tackle; the rod being either of bamboo or cane, with a light stiff top, a small winch, running tackle of fine platted silk, fine gut line, quill float, and No. 9 or 10 hook: when a No. 10 hook is used, they are generally those of a thicker substance than the usual kind, and are seldom used by experienced Anglers for any other purpose than Barbel fishing; those stout hooks are kept at the principal tackle shops in London. The reason these sort and small sized hooks are preferred in Barbel fishing is, that in fine weather and bright water they are very shy in biting, and, therefore, require the finest tackle and smallest hook to beguile them: besides, the Barbel has but a small mouth, and that so placed as to make it somewhat difficult to take quickly a large bait, when passing by them; but when legering, the bait lies still on the ground, then the Barbel can suck in a lob-worm, or large piece of greaves, and as the chaps of Barbel are of such a strong leather substance, the smallest hook, if strong, will hold the largest of them, which the experienced Angler knows, because he is obliged to cut out the hook after having killed a Barbel; baits —red worms, gentles, and greaves. The bait must always touch, and, in strong streams or thick water, drag two or three inches on the ground; keep the top of your rod always over the float, and do not let the line touch the water; I mean that part of the line between the top of the rod and the float, which should be about two feet, for, if longer, it bags, and hangs in the water, and prevents your hitting a very quick bite or pull down;

this method should be followed in angling in streams for all kinds of Fish. Greaves are certainly the most killing bait; but, when I fish for Barbel, I always take the three baits with me, alternately putting worms or gentles, or greaves and a worm, on the hook together, as they sometimes want much enticing. Never omit trying a worm in a wet, or dark muggy evening: they will frequently take red worms all day in the Autumn, and also in the Spring, till June. When the water is coloured or thick, put two red worms on the hook in the following manner: enter the point of your hook in the first worm, near the head, and draw it up the shank; then enter the other near the tail, and carry the point downwards; then draw the first down, to cover the whole bend of the hook, and cast in. Some Anglers bring the tail of the worm to the point of the hook, thinking the worm appears more tempting, by being so placed. I believe one way answers as well as the other. Barbel may also be taken in the tumbling bays, and at the tail of mills in the river Lea, with the leger line, which the Angler manages while standing on the shore, instead of fishing from a punt, as in the Thames. In Flanders, Barbel will not take greaves or gentles, but will bite freely at a piece of half-boiled potatoe.

How to act when you see a bite, and have hooked a Barbel.

The Barbel bites very sharp, and pulls the float down very suddenly, therefore you must strike immediately you perceive it: raise the top of your rod a little, and permit him to run some considerable distance before

you attempt to turn or check him; then endeavour to keep your fish away from the shelves under the bank, and from heavy beds of weeds; take him from the current into deep and still water as soon as possible, and play him till he has quite lost his strength, before you attempt to land him, which will sometimes occupy near half an hour, if a very heavy Fish, and you are fishing with a gut line and float, and small hook: but be not afraid, though your hook is small; for, when fairly fixed in his strong fleshy lips, it will never draw. This makes Barbel fishing so pleasant to a good Angler, when angling with such fine tackle as above described, and killing a game Fish under the point of his rod.

Before you begin to angle for Barbel, throw in plenty of ground-bait, (you can hardly give them too much,) and continue to do so frequently, while fishing for them. The best ground-bait is made with soaked greaves, bran, and clay mixed together, as directed in page 27. A large quantity of worms chopped into pieces, mixed with clay and bran, are likewise good and very enticing ground-bait, especially if thrown in the night before.

The seasons to fish for Barbel, and where.

The Barbel feed from March till November, all the day, but best in the morning and evening: indeed, the chance of success increases with the coming night. They will even bite all night, and will feed very freely after rain, when the water is thickened a little.

Barbel are frequently caught foul, that is, hooked by some part of the body, instead of the mouth, without their biting; for when they are swimming or

floating about the ground-bait, &c., their fins, body, or tail, often strike against the lower part of the Angler's line or hook, which moves the float like a bite; the Angler, supposing it to be so, strikes, and generally hooks the fish. The chance of this way of taking Barbel is increased by putting two hooks on the line, about eight, ten, or twelve inches apart, especially when the water is thick, and during the night.

Remarks on the Nature, Colour, &c. of Barbel.

The Barbel spawn in April or May, and are in season about a month after. They delight to lie in deeps, in eddies, and near large beds of weeds, and under light waving weeds on the sharps, in warm weather; and also at the end of scouers in mill-pools, or mill-streams, the tails of mills, and under banks, routing up the gravel or sand with their noses, like pigs; feeding on small worms, and the little Water-snail, fresh-water Shrimp or Periwinkle, which they find there. A fresh Water-snail, when taken out of the shell, is a good bait, when leger fishing, for Barbel.

Barbel have an oblong head, sharp, cunning pig eyes, and four fleshy wattels about the mouth; the back is of an olive-brownish colour, the belly white silvery; the scales all over the body are placed in the most exact order, the mouth is under-hung, and the lips consist of a fleshy substance, which they can protrude or contract at pleasure; the body is long, thick, and full; the fins, a pale red colour, the tail is forked, the upper point being curiously curved, sharp pointed,

and very strong; with this sharp-pointed ray the Barbel is enabled to defend itself, brake the Angler's tackle, &c. The back, or dorsal fin has also a sharp strong ray, which, doubtless, the Fish uses for its protection. The Barbel, when well grown and in season, I think, is a very handsome, noble looking Fish.

Very large Barbel are taken in the river Lea, all the way from Hackney Marshes as far up this river as Waltham-abbey, particularly in the subscription water at Bleak-hall, Edmonton, formerly called Cook's ferry, and at Shury's water, called Flander's Weir, and so on to Waltham-abbey. Barbel are very rarely taken as high up as Broxbourn and Hoddesdon, on the Lea. In the river Thames, as far as the City of London claims the right of Fishery, the heaviest are taken at Staines, Chertsey-bridge, Shepperton, Walton, and Hampton-deeps. They are also taken at Thames Ditton, Kingston, Twickenham, and Richmond; but seldom so large as at the first-mentioned places. Barbel are also numerous in Germany, France, Spain, and Portugal.

Barbel grow to a very large size in the river Thames. I knew of one, in Hampton-deeps, in the year 1816, which had been hooked by several Anglers, but always broke their tackle. The boatmen, at Hampton, thought this must weigh near thirty pounds, and from its bold and piratical practices, they named him "Paul Jones" The largest in the river Lea, that I know of, was taken at Mr. Basset's Mills, Sewardstone, weighing eighteen pounds.

The Chub.

The fearful Chevin loves the shaded stream.

THE Chub is a river Fish, of the Carp species, rather bony, and not very choice food, particularly in Summer; being firmer and better tasted during the Spring, Autumn, and Winter months. But the Chub affords the Angler much amusement, as it will take a bait all the year round, and is a bold-biting Fish, either at the top of the water or at the bottom; therefore, Chub fishing is much followed by many Anglers. At the top, he greedily takes moths, large flies, cockchafers, bees, &c. (of which I shall fully speak when treating on Fly-fishing;) but you must observe, though the Chub will bite boldly, yet they are a shy Fish, and if they see you, they generally leave the hole or place while you remain; therefore, keep as far off as you can the whole time you are

angling for or killing one; I generally make it a practice, after having killed a brace or two of Chub, in a hole or swim, to move to another place, the haunt of Chub, and to a third; then returning to the first, and so on: those who follow such a plan, will be rewarded for the extra trouble they may have taken.

When angling for Chub, where you have reason to expect heavy Fish, and the water is clear of trees, heavy weeds, &c., use such a rod, winch, and running tackle, as recommended for Barbel fishing in the river Lea, and single gut-line, quill float, and hook, No. 8 or 9. Strike the moment you perceive a bite, and give plenty of line to let him run freely, for the Chub, immediately it is hooked, generally runs furiously to some heavy weed, or to the middle, or opposite side of the river or pool, without stopping; therefore it is necessary to give plenty of line, otherwise your Fish will break away in the first instance, which they generally do when you hook a heavy one, and are without a winch, or the winch locked. Chub are not so game a fish as the Barbel, for, after his first or second effort, in running, and a few plunges, you may venture to look at him, and, soon after, bring him to the shore or landing net; but if you are fishing for Chub between the stumps, roots, or close to the braches of willows, &c., which frequently hang over and touch, or grow under the water, places where Chub love to lay, especially in cold weather, you should use a stronger line, of a manageable length, without a winch, and the moment you strike a fish, at all hazards, hold

against its getting among those roots, branches, &c. or he will surely get off, and generally break your line. The Angler may fish in such places as the above with a rod and line, without a float, if he think proper, in the following way: put a few shot on the line, about ten inches above the hook, which will be enough to sink the bait; drop in the baited hook among or between the branches or roots, suffer it to sink to the bottom, then draw it gently up near the surface, so continue to act till you feel a bite, then strike smart, and get your fish ashore as quick as you can; this way of angling is called "sink and draw."

The baits for Chub are greaves, gentles, paste, red worms, bullock's brains, and pith from the back bone. You may, occasionally, take heavy Chub with a lob-worm, either laid as a peg-line, at night time, or with a leger in the day—*see night lines and leger lines for Eels.* Chub are also sometimes taken with a Roach or Gudgeon, when trolling for Jack. Trolling or angling with a live minnow or a small frog is also often successfully practised, particularly in the latter end of Spring, by which method many large Chub are taken. (Troll the same as for Trout.) During April and May, red worms are a good bait; two should be put on the hook, the same as for Barbel; for the Chub loves a large bait. In the Summer months, gentles and greaves, but during Summer and Autumn, greaves are the best bait; during Winter and in March, bullock's brains and pith is a killing bait. To bait with bullock's brains and pith, observe the

following rules:—take some pith of the back-bone of an ox, and cut it into small pieces, nearly the size of a cherry, to bait the hook. The bullock's brains are to be chewed, and spit out of your mouth into the water, as ground-bait to entice the Chub. Plumb the depth, and fish close to the bottom; you may kill some at mid-water or a little lower, but more at bottom; this method is practised during the Winter, when Chub retire to deep still holes, where you must angle for them, and fear not taking very heavy Fish, for, at this season, Chub are immoderately fond of the above bait.—Note, chewing and spitting out the brains into the water for ground-bait, is called *blowing of brains;* but as many Anglers feel great objection or antipathy to the chewing of raw brains, they should prepare them as follows: take as many bullock's, cow's, calf's, or sheep's brains as will nearly fill a quart pan, cut them into small pieces with a pair of scissars (and if you then pound them in a mortar, afterwards, it will be better); now mix the brains carefully with bran and some house sand, and cast them into the water, in small quantities, and repeat it occasionally while you are angling.

If this bait is not to be procured, use the whitest greaves you can get, or paste made of bread, cheese, honey, &c. (see page 21) which is the next in value for killing. Before you begin to angle for Chub, throw in plenty of ground-bait, and, frequently, while you are fishing, of the same sort as used for Barbel, or made with soaked bread, pollard, and bran, worked

together, but keep as much out of sight as you can: they bite during the whole day, but best in the morning and evening, in Summer until quite dark, and all night. Fish as near the middle of the stream as you can in the Spring months, and also on the shallows and scouers, but in the Winter, in deep holes: let the bait drag two or three inches on the ground. From Michaelmas till May is the season for catching Chub by bottom fishing: May, June, July, and August are the best months for angling with flies, moths, bees, &c., at the top of the water. Chub will also take a black snail in some waters early in the morning and late at evening, when it is used as follows: take a black snail and cut through the skin at the belly, which is white inside, and so fix it on a No. 5 hook as to shew the white part, and dap therewith the same as directed with bees, &c., in that part of the work termed Fly Fishing. In Flanders, the inside of a red cherry is found the most killing bait for Chub.

Chub never thrive well in ponds or canals, but increase and delight much in deep holes, scouers, tumbling-bays, at the tail of mills, &c. in rivers, and will grow to the weight of nine pounds and upwards: in the Autumn and cold weather, they keep close in deep dark holes, or in the shelves under banks, and in holes that are shaded and secured by the roots of large willow and alder trees, and bushes whose branches hang close to, or in the water. The river Lea is famous for large Chub, from Temple-mills and Lea-bridge, all the way to Hoddesdon and Ware. The Chub will feed all the

year, and occasionally take your live or dead bait when you are trolling for Jack; and, while alive, they will continue to harbour in the same hole; so true is the old saying among Anglers, "*Once a Chub-hole, always a Chub-hole.*"

Although the Chub is not much prized for the table, they are a very bold, handsome-looking Fish in form and colour, until they attain the weight of three or four pounds; afterwards, as they increase in size, they diminish in the symmetry of their shape, particularly by the enlargement of the head, and the enormous width of the mouth. When quite in season, and from two to four pounds in weight, they greatly resemble the Carp, (for which they are often taken,) except the back fin, but they are rather longer in the body, and their scales are also larger, and of a lighter colour; indeed, when small, their scales are so white that they are often mistaken, by the superficial Angler, for large Dace; but the greatest difference between large Dace and small Chub, is, that the upper part of the dorsal fin, and the end of the tail of Chub, are of a dark purple, (see the engraving;) the tail is also less forked than the Dace, and the mouth and head larger, and of a bluff or round shape. They generally spawn in the beginning of May, and deposit it in the sand or gravel on the sharps and scouers, which points out to the observing Angler where to fish for them in the Spring. Chub eat better while full than after they have spawned: the spawn fried with the Fish at this season will be found very palateable, and per-

fectly harmless: when stewed in the same manner as Carp, they are far from indifferent food, especially during Winter and Spring.

CHAP. X.

The Roach.

Unwary Roach the sandy bottom choose.

Roach are very numerous in most rivers in England, and by some writers they are considered a silly Fish, and easily to be taken; but it requires much skill and practice, with a quick eye, fine tackle, and a steady hand, before any one can pretend to the character of a good Roach Angler. I will admit, that in ponds, where they are half-starved, Roach are easily taken, and that

the small ones in rivers, are frequently caught with almost any kind of tackle or baits; but pond Roach-fishing affords little sport to the true and general informed Angler, and little more does taking those small ones on the shallows in rivers: but the taking thirty pounds weight or more of Roach, from six or eight ounces to a pound or upwards each Fish, out of a stream from six to ten feet deep, with a very light rod, single hair line, and No. 10 or 11 hook, in a day's angling, (which is frequently done by the London Anglers,) affords as much amusement to some as any other mode of fishing; indeed, I am acquainted with many Anglers who seldom wet a line but for Roach, preferring it to every other kind of fishing.

To take heavy Roach, (and those only are worth taking) like an artist, you must use a light cane rod, from eighteen to near twenty feet long, with a fine light stiff top, a single hair-line, a tip-capped float, and No. 10 or 11 hook; choose them very short in the shank, as Roaches mouths are very small: observe, when so fishing, that the line which is above the float, and is fastened to the top of the rod, must not be more than twelve or eighteen inches, or you will not hit a fine bite, from the line being too long, and hanging slack on the water; the line should be so shotted with very small shot, that not much more than an eighth of an inch of the float appears above the water; for Roach frequently (and very often the heaviest of them) bite so fine or gently, that, without attending to the above niceties in

adjusting your line, you will lose the chance of two bites out of three. In Angling for Roach, a sitting posture is to be preferred, as, by that means, you are more out of their sight: always keep the top of your rod up over the float, and so high that none of the line above the float lies on or touches the water; and when you see the least movement of the float, either by its being pulled down, or thrown a little up, strike quick but lightly, (the motion coming from your wrist, not from the arm); for if the jerk is too violent, you will break the line, which need not be hazarded, as the least jerk hooks those tender mouthed Fish. If you have hit or hooked a Fish, raise the top of your rod, keeping him as much under the top as you can, and the butt downwards, nearly touching the ground, and by thus playing him under the point of your rod, he will soon be your own. In this fine-fishing, it is best to take with you a landing net, particularly if you fish off a high bank or wharfing, or you will hazard breaking the line or hook in weighing the Fish out. Roach may be taken with larger hooks and stronger tackle than that which I have described; but they who fish finest will succeed best, besides the pleasure the Angler feels while killing a Fish with the elasticity of a hair line, and light pliant rod. Those who object to single hair lines, because they will occasionally break, and cause trouble and delay while at their sport, must use the finest single gut they can procure, which are, certainly less liable to break, and fit them with float-hook, &c., as described with single

hair: some Anglers make their Roach lines half single hair, and half two hairs twisted, or as much single hair from the hook as will nearly reach to the float, because, in case the line breaks, the single hair will go first; and, in that case, having the float on the twisted, you save it: this way of fitting up hair lines is superior to any other, in my opinion.

The best bait for Roach, in still waters and gentle streams, is paste made of second-day's baked white bread (the crumb) slightly dipped in water, which must be immediately squeezed out again; then place it in the palm of your left hand, and knead it with the thumb and finger of your right, for ten minutes, or until of a proper consistence; or the crumb of new bread without wetting. Roach will take this paste the whole year round; and, by adding a little vermilion, or red ochre, it will be of a pale pink, or salmon colour, which they sometimes prefer; in the Spring and Summer they will take gentles, and cads; in Winter and Autumn, baked and parboiled wheat, and malt, also small red worms and greaves; but paste is the most killing bait for large Roach. Put a piece on the hook, about the size of a marrowfat pea, and before you begin to angle, plumb the depth accurately, in the way directed in page 17, and let your bait gently touch or drift along the bottom of the river.—Note: Always make it a rule, when angling for Roach, Barbel, Chub, and other Fish that require ground-baiting, to let your line remain with the plummet attached to it, in the water, while you are preparing and casting in ground-

bait, by which means the line gets stretched and softened, and, consequently, less likely to break, which gut and hair frequently do, when dry and stiff, and also, occasionally, while fishing, dip the line above the float in the water for the same reason, especially in hot dry weather.

During the very warm weather, Roach occasionally swim near the surface of the water, and will then sometimes take the bait at mid-water, or a house-fly, better than at bottom; but this does not often occur, therefore always begin to fish with the bait slightly dragging or touching the bottom. After trying this way without success, you then may angle at mid water; and you may also fish at various depths when angling in a tide-river, during the time the tide is making, and until high-water. And further note, when angling in rivers and streams, especially for Roach, make choice of a swim that is shoal at the end of it, because, as the ground-bait separates, it drifts down the stream, and will lodge there, and keep the Fish from going farther; and the baited hook will also touch the bottom all the way: but if the end of a swim is deeper than the top or beginning, your baited hook will not then be at a proper depth as it proceeds, which is material, as Roach, Chub, and Dace generally bite at the end of the swim, especially if the water is shallow or bright.

When Roach-fishing, you should occasionally take the depth again, particularly if the Fish leave off feeding, which they will do if you have lost the proper depth: this happens in rivers, from the water rising

or falling from tides, opening locks, mills, &c.; and sometimes from the line drawing through the caps of the float. Ground-bait plentifully before you begin; or if the place be baited over night it is better, with small balls of the ground-bait, as described in page 25: and also while angling, cast in that or chewed bread frequently, close to the float. When angling for Roach in a still hole, or gentle stream or eddy, nothing is so good for ground-bait as chewed bread, or bread and bran made into small pellets, and thrown gently in by six or eight pieces together, close about the place your float and baited hook moves in. During July and August, Roach may be taken in the following manner with an ant-fly or a house-fly, and also a cad, and sometimes with a gentle, put on a No. 11 hook, and single hair-line to a fine rod: put one small shot on about four inches above the hook, to sink the bait, then draw the baited hook gently or slowly up to the surface of the water, and so continue till you feel a bite; the Roach generally take the bait as it approaches the top. When fishing this way, try round piles, bridges, flood-gates, and deep still-holes, where bushes and trees grow over the water. I have found a Wasp gentle a killing bait in some waters, but not so in all: this bait is also difficult to procure. For further account of Wasp gentles, see the *Appendix*, when treating on cads, worms, &c. In Flanders, half-boiled potatoes or paste are the only baits used for Roach, as they will not touch a gentle or greaves in that country.

Roach breed and thrive in canals, ponds, and lakes,

but best in rivers: in rivers they are found on the shallows and scouers during Spring, and among weeds in Summer; in eddies and in deep holes, during Winter: also about bridges, piles, and locks, in ponds; search for them near flood-gates, sluices, and at the mouth of streams that run in and out of a pond, and also about those parts where the bottom is clean, gravelly, or sandy. They bite, all the year, in rivers, but best late in the evening, in hot weather; in ponds, docks, and still waters during Summer only, or say from April to October.

The Roach is a species of Carp, with teeth at the entrance of the throat, and, when in season, is a very handsome Fish: they are in season from September until March, at which times their scales are large and lie very smooth, and are of a dark green or bluish hue on the back; nearer the belly a bright silver colour; they have a fine eye, and the fins are a bright red; the tail is of a dusky red, somewhat mixed with a light purple hue; they spawn about the middle of May; but in forward Summers, or after mild Winters, they will cast their spawn in the latter end of April. For some weeks after, they are very sickly; their scales are nearly as rough as oyster-shells, and they are altogether unfit for food, if caught; but at this time Roach are not much disposed to take a bait, for they then keep among and feed on weeds. Towards the latter end of July they begin to improve in health, and will more freely take a bait; but they will do so much better some weeks later in the season, after leaving the weeds on which they have fed (which begin to turn sour in September) and

getting into deep water. Roach seldom exceed two pounds in weight, though I have known some taken weighing more than three pounds, but such heavy Roach are not often met with. In the East and West-India Docks, at Blackwall, Roach and Dace thrive well, and are of a superior size, flavour, and fatness, which I consider principally to arise from their feeding on Shrimps; with which bait, when I have been fishing for Perch, I have taken many heavy Roach and Dace. The East and West-India Docks are well stored with Perch, Roach, Dace, Bream, Flounders and Eels, they also contain some Jack, Pike, Carp, and Tench; the Fish in those Docks begin to take a bait in June and continue till November; the Angler must provide a long line, as the general depth of water is eighteen feet; live Shrimps and Minnows will be found the most killing baits, and morning and evening the best time to use them.—Note, when large Roach are scored across the sides, and broiled with the scales on, they are considered by many as a well-flavoured Fish, especially in the Autumn and Winter seasons.

CHAP. XI.

The Dace, or Dare.

The silvery Dace in sharpest streams delight.

THE DACE is a very handsome-shaped Fish; the scales and fins are small; the body long and of a bright silvery colour; they are also considered a light nutritious food. Dace afford the Angler much sport, as they generally bite very freely; and those of half a pound weight will struggle long and lustily before you can safely bring them to hand. They are angled for with the same sort of tackle as is used in Roach-fishing: indeed, where you find Roach in rivers, you will frequently take Dace; but they are more likely to be met with, and also the largest, when you are angling for Barbel or Chub, and baiting with greaves or a

red worm: strike smartly the moment you perceive a bite, and act as directed in killing Roach. Much amusement may be had by whipping for Dace, with two or three artificial flies on a line, and also with gentles, particularly in the evening, Dace may also be taken this way by moon-light. The best places for this mode of angling are the sharps and rippling shallows at mill-tails and streams.—*See, further, on whipping for Dace in Fly-Fishing.*

When you angle in a place more likely for Dace than Roach, which is in rapid currents, sharps, scouers, and strong streams and eddies, especially near mill-tails, and also in strong currents, and eddies, at the meeting of two streams, you may then use a hook, one or two sizes larger than for Roach, and a fine gut line, particularly if you bait with a red worm, which Dace are very fond of during Spring and Autumn. In Summer, angle with two gentles on your hook, or a small piece of greaves and a gentle on the point of your hook: greaves make the best bait for large Dace, especially in a wet, gloomy day towards the end of the Summer and Autumn. Let your bait drag on the bottom, and strike the moment you see a bite,—Note, when you intend fishing for Dace with greaves, ground-bait plentifully with greaves, bran, and clay. *(See directions for Ground-bait.)* In fishing for Dace without a float on your line, put a few small shot about nine inches above the hook, to keep the bait on the ground; stand up the stream, and let your baited hook run down it, (say

twenty yards or more,) and when you feel a bite strike sharp; this mode of angling is called tripping, a bait.

The Dace is a river Fish, and will not thrive in ponds or still waters. They do not bite much later in the season than October, for they then retire, like Barbel, to deep waters until Spring; but you may begin to fish for them in March. If the swim you are fishing in contains Roach as well as Dace, the the Dace will then take paste as free as the Roach; in such case, ground bait same as when Roach fishing; but when you intend devoting a whole day to Dace fishing, you will kill more fish by angling in three or more different swims or holes, (say two or three hours at each place,) than continuing at one spot: at such times, ground-bait with bran, greaves, and clay.

Remarks on Dace.

The Dare or Dace are gregarious and lively Fish, but never attain to a great size, seldom weighing a pound. They are of the Carp species, and generally cast their spawn early in April; previous to which time, they come on the gravelly shallows in great numbers, and rub themselves on the gravel, where they remain, feeding on small worms, &c. until they have deposited their spawn, which they do among the loose light gravel. Dace will at this season take a red worm freely; and as the water, early in Spring, is generally somewhat thick, from recent floods and rains, it will allow the Angler to use tolerably strong tackle. Some Anglers

then put on two No. 9 hooks, about ten inches apart, one above the other, with a tolerable heavy float, and let the bottom hook drag two or three inches on the ground, and fish in strong eddies, at mill-tails, &c., and meet with much sport, sometimes taking Trout while so fishing.—Note, cook large Dace the same way as directed for Roach, in page 80.

CHAP. XII.

The Tench.

THE Tench is generally prized as a fine rich Fish in England, but it is not so much esteemed on the continent: the Germans, in derision, call it the *Shoemaker;* but they are very scarce in most rivers and streams about London; some few are taken in the

Spring and Summer, out of the rivers Thames and Lea, and also in the Camberwell and Croydon canal. I have caught very fine Tench in the river Roding, at Abridge, Woodford bridge, and near the bridge called Red-bridge, at Wanstead, particularly in the holes to the north of the bridge in the meadows: the ponds in Wanstead-park abound with Tench. They take red worms best in the Spring; and gentles, not too much scoured, or sweet paste, in the hot months. Use a fine gut-line, quill-float, and No. 9 or 10 hook; fish close to the bottom, and ground-bait with small pellets of bread, or chewed bread, or bread and bran mixed; or throw in about half-a-dozen gentles, or pieces of worms, frequently, close to your float. When the large Tench take a bait, especially in still waters, they take or suck it in slowly, and generally draw the float straight down; strike immediately it disappears.

The Tench will breed in rivers, lakes, and ponds, but they thrive best in those ponds where the bottom is composed of loomy clay, or mud, and in foul and weedy waters; they will sometimes bite very free all day in Summer, during warm, close, dark weather, particularly while small, misty rain descends; at other times, only late in the evening, or early in the morning. Your bait should nearly touch the ground in ponds, but must drag a little on the bottom in rivers, unless it is very dull, sultry weather, or it rains; very few Tench are ever caught in the day. Just after a good deal of warm rain has fallen, Tench will take the small white snail or slug, which is then found in numbers on grass-

plots in gardens; begin to angle for Tench in ponds, or still waters, early in May, and continue until September. In rivers, they are sometimes caught in March or April, and until Michaelmas. In Summer, Tench will get among the weeds, and keep near the surface of the water, when you may take them with rod, line, and baited hook, by dropping the bait in any little opening you observe among a bed of weeds, as when the weeds are very thick you can fish no other way. The line should be without a float; put a few shot on the line, just to sink the bait a few inches in the water, and when you see or feel a bite, strike smart, and bring the Fish ashore. In such places you cannot play a heavy Fish, therefore use a short stout line, and a No. 7 or 8 hook; use the same baits as when float-fishing, but well-scoured red worms generally succeed best.

Baits for Tench, and the Seasons to use them.

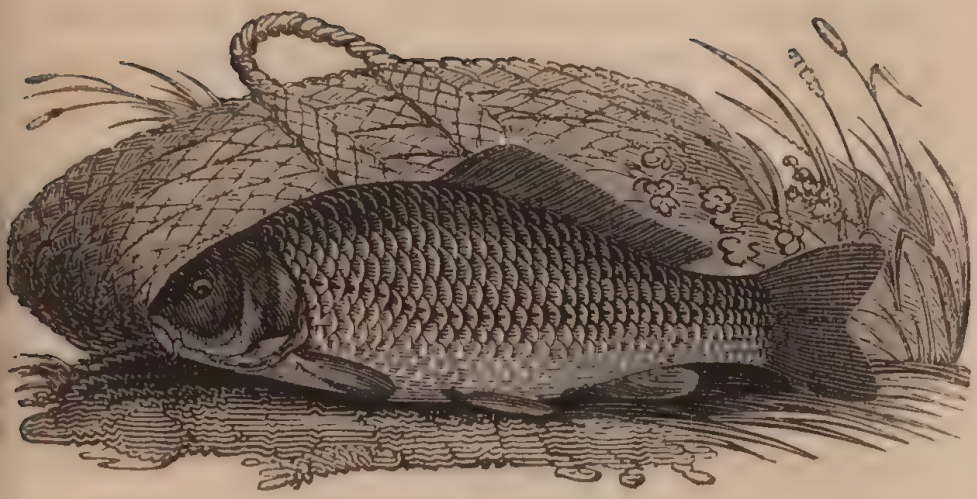
During April and May, blood worms and red worms are the best baits: as the season further advances, prefer baiting with gentles, rather green, and sweet paste, and so continue to the end. If you wish to thin a pond of Tench, get a bucket full of bullock's blood and fresh grains, well mixed together, and ground-bait therewith over night, for several succeeding nights, and angle the following days: this method and mixture also answers for Carp fishing.

Remarks on Tench.

The Tench has a few teeth in his jaws, and is of the Carp species, but not a very handsome Fish in shape, being short and thick, and when of a large size nearly as broad as they are long; their fins and tail are large, and of a purple violet colour; their scales are very small and close, and of a greenish gold colour, and the whole body is covered with a balsamic quality, healing the wounded and sick of all the finny race; for which purpose, writers say, the sick and wounded rub themselves against the Tench, and receive a cure: this is the general and received opinion, and, in consequence, the Tench is honoured with the name of the *Physician*, and it is said they are respected, even by the all-devouring Pike.

Whether the forbearance of the Pike arises from respect to the healing qualities of the Tench, or is to be attributed to a dislike of the slimy matter on its body, I know not, but I believe the Tench is perfectly free from the persecution of Jack and Pike; for I have never taken one that has been at all mutilated in its fins, tail, or any other part; or with any of those wounds or scars on the body, which are so frequently met with by the Angler, among the small Fish he takes. The Eel also foregoes his voracity, in regard to the Tench, both by night and day. I have known several trimmers to be laid at night, baited with live Fish, Roach, Dace, Bleak, and Tench, each about six or seven inches long; and when those trimmers were examined in the morning, both Eels and Jack have been taken by the hooks

baited with any other Fish but the Tench, which I found as lively as when put in the river the preceding night, without ever having been disturbed: this has invariably been the case during my experience; neither have I met with even one solitary instance to the contrary, related by any of my acquaintance, who had numerous opportunities of noticing the singular circumstance of the perfect freedom of death or wounds which the Tench enjoys over every other inhabitant of the liquid element, arising from the continual conflicts among each other. Tench generally spawn in June: they are seldom caught so large as to weigh five pounds; but the curious reader will find, in "Daniel's Rural Sports," an account of a singular shaped, and very heavy Tench found in some mud, &c., in the Park of Thornville Royal, in Yorkshire, belonging to the late Colonel Thornton; the description of this Tench is accompanied with an engraving, and some humourous verses.



The Carp.

The yellow Carp, with scales bedropp'd with gold.

THE Carp is a beautiful Fish, and much prized by many for the richness of its juices and blood. They are not very numerous, either in the river Thames or Lea, but what are caught are remarkably fine and large, say to ten pounds weight, and they are also very fat and rich in flavour. The Carp is very shy in biting at a baited hook, particularly the large ones, who seem to increase in cunning and craft with their weight and age: in angling for them, use a long light rod, and a winch with fine running tackle; a small, fine, tip-capped quill float; fine single gut line, shotted with small shot, and a No. 9 hook; indeed, you must fish as fine as the nature of the stream will allow, or you have little chance of taking Carp. They begin to feed in rivers, in the month of February, if the weather is seasonably mild, from which time, till June, they generally bite more freely than at any other part of the season, and

during those months they will take a bait at any time of the day: after this time, June till Michaelmas, you must not expect much sport in Carp-fishing in the day time, but try for them early and late. Carp will seldom take a bait after October, unless the weather is unusually mild, until the following February. Carp seldom feed in ponds, until the beginning of the month of May. The best bait (particularly, early in the season) is well-scoured red worms and blood worms: in the Summer, half-scoured gentles, and parboiled marrowfat peas and paste. I frequently bait my hook with a red worm and a gentle together; put the worm on first, then the gentle to cover the point and barb of the hook, and think it sometimes increases my success during the first part of the Summer. On a wet, warm evening, I have had sport by baiting with a small green caterpillar, found on bushes, cabbage-leaves, &c.; when you bait with red worms, put only one on your hook; but when blood worms three or four, and the same with gentles. The crumb of new bread dipped in honey, and well worked into a stiff paste, is a killing bait for Carp in rivers, or still waters, towards the Autumn. You may use a piece of it nearly as large as a small marble, for a bait, with which cover the shank as well as the other parts of your hook. When fishing with this paste, in still water, the Carp will suck it off the hook so slyly, that, without you keep a watchful eye, your bait will be gone, without your discovering a bite: Carp are very fond of a wasp gentle; put two or three on your hook: they are also very fond of small pieces of white greaves.

In fishing for Carp, keep as far from the water as you can; and, if convenient, you should ground-bait the place you intend angling in, the night before, and also then plumb the depth, that you may not have occasion to disturb the water, when you begin to angle very early in the morning. Those who are inclined, or have an opportunity of pursuing this plan, will find they have not lost their labour. Carp will seldom bite in the middle of the day, in Summer, unless soft light rain descends: the best time is as soon as you can see your float in the water, in the morning, and very late in the evening; they will even feed all night. When angling in a stream, strike immediately you see a bite; but if in a pond, or very still water, wait a moment or two before you strike, because Carp do not gorge so quickly in dead water, as in a stream where food passes on with the current, which only allows time enough to catch, or it is gone. When you have hooked a Carp, give line, use him gently and with patience, winding him in, and letting out again, till he is quite exhausted; for they are very strong and exceeding artful Fish in the water, especially in rivers, and will try every possible way to get among heavy weeds, around a pile or post, or under the shelving banks, so as to endanger breaking the line; or get away by the hook's drawing, which Carp and Chub particularly have a wonderful knack of effecting, when they get among heavy weeds, or between branches and roots of trees which are under the surface of the water. When Carp fishing, and the place not having been previously ground-baited, then use such as when

Roach fishing, see page 25, but throw it in gently, and in small pieces, for Carp are soon alarmed: when angling with sweet paste, frequently throw in a few small pieces of it close to your float; let your bait swim about half-an-inch from the bottom, when angling in still water; but it should touch the bottom, when fishing in a river or stream. Always keep as much as possible out of the sight of Carp, while angling for them, either by sitting down, or stooping behind weeds, &c. New-made grains, worms cut into small pieces, and bruised green peas, mixed with bran and greaves, thrown in the night before, is good ground-bait, especially in ponds, or still holes in rivers, where it will not drift away; also parboiled barley or malt, mixed with treacle or blood. The Angler must exert himself very early in the morning, and late in the evening, when fishing for Carp; and if without success for many hours, he must not think it strange, (for this often occurs when angling for Carp) always bearing in mind, that "Hope and Patience support the Fisherman."

If you have been trying for Carp without success, for several hours, and have thrown in much ground-bait, cast no more in during the last two hours you angle for them, as it frequently happens in Carp fishing that they will not feed during the day time, but towards its decline they will take a bait freely; and, as you have already thrown in enough to keep them about the spot you are angling in, the casting in more is apt to alarm so shy a Fish as Carp, and drive them away.

When I fish for Carp in ponds, or any still waters, I

generally use two rods and lines, placing them within a few yards of each other; then lay my rods carefully down, (or resting on a forked stick or iron,) so that the line can run free; first drawing from the winch a yard or more of line, and laying it down clear of every thing that might impede its course. I then retire as far from the water as the seeing my float will allow; as by so keeping out of the sight of such shy Fish is the only chance of killing a brace or two in a day: the Angler should bear in mind, that Carp very cautiously and slowly suck in the baited hook in still waters; but when they have so done, and feel the hook, they generally rush with extraordinary velocity to the middle of the pond or water; the consequence is, if any thing prevents the line running free, the rod and all is drawn into the water; and if it is a large fish, the whole is soon out of the Angler's reach. If you use a line without running tackle, it is quite necessary for you to fasten the rod to something by a slip knot; for if you lay it down, and a heavy Carp hooks himself, in an instant the rod and all is in the water; and if you are fortunate enough to regain your tackle, the Carp are so disturbed, that there is no chance of getting another bite in that place for twelve hours to come.

Sometimes, in very hot weather, you will hear Carp and Tench sucking among beds of broad leaved weeds in ponds and moats; they are then to be taken by a dipping bait with a red worm or paste; indeed some ponds are so covered with weeds that they cannot be fished by any other method; use a line without a float;

put one or two shot a few inches above your baited hook; then, with extreme gentleness, drop your bait between those weeds, and let it hang quietly, about an inch in the water; for when you hear Carp or Tench sucking, they then are close to the surface of the water, and part of their bodies are sometimes above it, but covered by those broad leaves and weeds; if they do not see you, and you manage your tackle adroitly, when so placing your baited hook, Carp and Tench will often suck it in, and gorge it, which is soon known to the Angler by their violent struggling, if he has hooked a heavy Fish. If you cast among those weeds a few slices of bread, a few hours before you begin to angle, it will keep the Carp to the place. In the early part of the Summer you may fish with a floated line, in ponds for Carp, prefer the shallow parts, and especially where you find that a stream or ditch runs into it; those parts the Carp resort to till after they spawn: you may also fish in deep water, about flood-gates and piles. In Flanders, the usual baits for Carp are the inside of cherries, or half-boiled potatoes.

Remarks on Carp.

Writers on Natural History say, that Carp are a long-lived Fish, and will continue to cast their spawn for more than thirty years, and that they grow to the length of a yard, &c. The largest that I ever saw, was one that was taken out of the basin facing Tilney House, in Wanstead Park; the Carp had much wasted, apparently to me from age, but it then weighed eighteen

pounds. In respect to the taming and feeding of Carp from the hand, which the writers on Natural History give many singular accounts of, as Carp coming to the call or whistle of persons giving them food, &c., I doubt not the fact, because I know a gentleman at Maidstone who has a pond which contains many Carp; those Carp have been in the habit, for years, to come near the sides of the bank to take pieces of crumb bread, held to them just below the surface of the water. Another gentleman, Mr. Knight, who lives at Hackney, has also several Carp in a pond, which are very tame, and will take food from the hand of those persons they are in the habit of seeing daily, but are shy of strangers. I saw a visitor to this gentleman offer bread to some Carp which were swimming near the sides; but on their nearer approach, and not knowing him, they dived away. Some time after, the said gentleman laid himself at length on his stomach, and offered a piece of bread just under the water; and a Carp rose, took it, and very leisurely swam away.

Carp, in form, are thick, with a short neck; they have large scales, very regularly covering the whole body, like trellis-work or fine netting; the upper part of the sides are a greenish golden yellow; the lower part a whitish colour: the tail a sort of yellow violet; the mouth is small, with two wattles hanging from it; the dorsal fin reaches nearly the whole length of the back; they have neither teeth nor tongue, but a fleshy palate. Carp spawn early in June, and, some say, again in August, (but, during my observations, I

have never known such a case to occur,) at which time they are so intent in depositing their ova, among weeds, &c., near the shore side, that they may be sometimes caught with the hand, in small rivers, pits, and ponds. They are sometimes drawn out of shallow weedy ponds, with hay rakes, while spawning, though, at other times, no fish are more difficult to catch, even with nets, for they will escape the drag-net by leaping over it, or stick their heads in the mud while the cast or drag-net passes over them Carp will thrive well in some rivers, though, many believe, they will only breed in still waters, canals, lakes, and ponds. For it is very unusual to catch small Carp in rivers; in my own practice, I have never taken one so small as six ounces, in a river, although in ponds, canals, and marl pits, I have caught hundreds less than four ounces in weight.

Carp are found in deep holes by or near flood-gates, or shallows, and in and near large beds of weeds and rushes, on which they feed, sucking the juices therefrom; in doing which, they may be heard by the Angler, from the noise made by the chopping of their lips and jaws. Carp are very tenacious of life, and I have found them live longer in some damp grass or sags, rushes, &c., than any other Fish, after they are removed from their natural element, Eels excepted.

CHAP. XIII.

The Trout.

Swift Trout, diversified with crimson spots.

THE common Trout is a very beautiful Fish, both in form and colour, much like the Salmon in shape, and is excelled by none of the fresh-water tribe as a delicacy at table, the Salmon excepted. They are voracious, like the Pike, and destroy multitudes of Minnows, Loaches, and other small Fish; their jaws, mouth, and tongue, being studded with teeth. Trout are very strong and game Fish, affording the Angler fine sport, which circumstance, with their being considered a delicacy at table, causes them to be eagerly sought for. They are caught with small fish, and flies,

both natural and artificial, also with worms and cads. In angling for them, at bottom, use a long strong rod, and with a flexible top, running tackle, on a multiplying winch, and No. 6 or 7 hook; when you bait with worms, which are the best bait during Spring, especially in the early part of the morning, and late at night, or in the day-time, if the water be much coloured, and the weather dull or boisterous, particularly in April and May, angle without a float, first putting a sufficient number of shot on the line to sink the bait, placing them about nine inches above the hook; the line should be made of the choicest fine gut. Bait with either one lob-worm, or a blue-head marl-worm, or two marsh, brandlings, or tag-tail worms, well scoured, and very lively; for observe, Trout will not touch a worm that is half dead, or any way mangled or dirty. Put the two worms on the hook in the following manner: run the point of your hook in at the top of the first worm's head, and bring it out about three parts down the body, then draw it carefully up over the arming or whipping of the hook, while you put on the other; enter the point of your hook in the second worm somewhat below the middle, and carry it near to the head, then draw the first worm down to join it; if one worm, put it on as follows: enter the point of the hook about a quarter of an inch below its head, and carry it down to within a quarter-of-an-inch of the worm's tail, keep the point of the hook completely hid in the worm. This done, cast in your bait, standing as far as possible from the water up the stream,

and let it gently trip on the bottom; and when a Fish begins to bite, do not strike the first time you feel a slight tug, but rather slacken your line; but when you feel one or more sharp tugs together, then strike smartly, and if a heavy Fish, give him line, and be not in too great haste to land him.

Note: It is necessary, in angling this way, to put as many shot on your line as will readily sink the baited hook; because, if the stream be rapid, it is carried away without touching the ground, and you have but little chance then of a Trout taking your bait. While thus angling with a tripping bait, let the bait go with the middle or roughest part of the stream. In some small gravelly streams, cads are a more killing bait than worms, especially in the months of April and May, but in several rivers where Trout abound, Salmon-spawn is certainly the most killing, when used as a tripping bait.

The Trout is very strong, and struggles most violently; and, if an old Fish, generally, as soon as he feels the hook, will leap out of the water more than a foot high, and on falling again, will fly and flounce about in every direction, to the great alarm of the Angler for his rod, line, or hook. Now bear in mind what the *Poet* THOMSON says:—

> "With yielding hand, feeling him still,
> Yet to his furious course give way,
> 'Till floating broad upon his breathless side,
> You safely drag your spangled prize on shore."

The Minnow is a most killing bait for large old

Trout, particularly when used by spinning it against the stream, or in the eddies, where the water falls over into tumbling-bays, mill-tails, pools, &c. Hooks are fitted on purpose for this mode of angling, by the tackle-makers. When you are thus fishing, use strong tackle, and cast your bait lightly in the water, and draw against the stream or eddy very near the surface, so that you can see the Minnow. If you are angling from a high bridge, or any eminence, it will be best to let your bait be some considerable distance from you, particularly if the water is bright. This way of angling for Trout, is often very successful, and the largest Fish are taken by it. When you have a bite, let him run a little before you strike. When you are angling with a live Minnow for Trout, hook the Minnow by the lips, or beneath the back fin, with a No. 6 hook, and let your bait swim rather below mid-water. Deep dark holes, surrounded with trees, &c., and free from an eddy or stream, are the most likely places to take a Trout in, when fishing with a live Minnow. Some Anglers put on their lines a small cork float, when fishing in a still hole. Trout are also taken with flies, both natural and artificial, which I shall describe under the head of Fly-fishing.

Trout will begin to feed in March, if the weather is fine for the season, and continue till Michaelmas, soon after which time they spawn. The first two or three months are the best for bottom-fishing; the Trout are then on the scouers and shallows, and feed most at bottom, because the weather is frequently

cold and unsettled, so that few flies are found on the water till April or May. In the Summer season especially, the large Trout love to lie in deep holes and eddies, near mill-tails, and pools; sometimes close to the apron, which is a good place to drop in a worm bait, also under or close to large stones, and near Alder Trees.—Note, You cannot be too early or late in bottom fishing for Trout, especially during a hot dry Summer.

Minnow Hook; the Shank leaded for Trolling or Roving for Trout, Perch, and Chub.

Trolling, Roving, or Dipping for Trout with a Minnow or Worms.

Get such a hook as is represented in the cut (all the principal Tackle Shops keep them,) tied to a length of the best twisted gut; for your bait, use a white middling-sized Minnow, in preference to the spotted and big-bellied ones, which you put on the hook exactly in the same way as directed with the gorge hook for Jack and Pike; only use a smaller needle, which is called a Minnow needle; fasten this length of gut, to which the hook is tied, to your traces, *(See a Cut of Traces in trolling for Jack, &c.)* which should be fitted in the following manner:

take two pieces, of about ten or twelve inche each, of choice twisted gut, and join them together neatly and strong, with a small box swivel; then at one end of the traces make a loop, and at the other end tie securely and neatly, a loop or hook swivel, on which you hang the length of twisted gut which is fixed to the baited hook; now fix the loop end of the traces to the running line on a light trolling rod; draw nearly as much line out as your rod is long; hold the rod in one hand and about a yard of your line drawn from the winch in the other, which you let go when you cast in your bait lightly in search; first to the opposite side or across the stream drawing over the current, raising and falling your bait: when you feel a bite, lower the top of your rod a little; wait two or three minutes before you strike, that the Trout may have time to gorge the bait; now wind up the slack line and strike handsomely. This mode of fishing is generally called roving or trolling for Trout. In dipping and drawing, your bait and tackle is the same; but there is not occasion for quite so much line to be drawn from your rod, as the bait, when dipping, is only dropped in holes, or near large stones, and in eddies near the bank you stand on. When the bait touches the bottom, gently draw it to the right, then the left, and slowly raise it to the surface, and so continue till you get a bite, then act as directed in roving; but if you rove or dip, and draw and bait with worms,

use a plain No. 6 or 7 hook, instead of the leaded hook, and put a few shot, about six inches above it, to sink the bait, which should be a black or blue-head marl-worm, or a lob worm, or two well-scoured marsh or tag tail worms, or several wasp gentles· when you feel a sharp tug at your bait, give the Fish a moment or two to gorge, and then strike smartly.

To bait with two worms, see page 98, and angle the same way, as when roving &c. with the Minnow. While fishing for Trout, keep as far from the water and out of sight as possible, for Trout are as timid and suspicious as they are voracious and strong: this method of angling for Trout may be adopted for Perch and Chub; indeed, while in search of Trout, you in some rivers frequently kill a Perch or Chub.—Note, the above description of tackle for roving and dipping for Trout is of the cheapest kind; but the Angler who will go to the expense of having his hook link and the two other links made of the strongest and choicest single gut fixed together with small box swivels, will assuredly find his advantage therein.

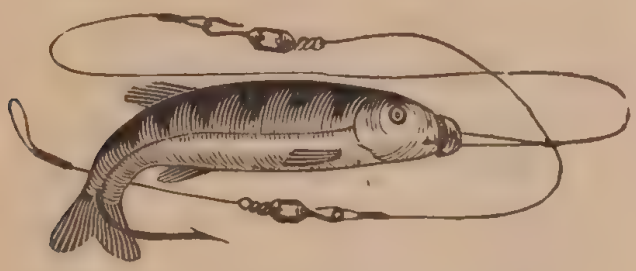
The London Angler has but seldom the pleasure of bringing home a dish of Trout caught in either the river Thames or Lea; for those rivers, however famous they may have been, at present contain very few, but those are very large and fat, some weighing more than ten pounds. There are, certainly, many good Trout streams within twenty miles of the metropolis,

but they are all private property. Yet here the gentleman Angler is seldom refused a day's fair fishing. The river Wandle, particularly at Carshalton, in Surrey, has numerous fine Trout; and again, at Merton-mills, &c., till you arrive at Wandsworth, and is the best and clearest stream near London for Trout. The little river called Ravensbourn, running from or by Sydenham, Lewisham, &c., to the Kent-road, Greenwich, has Trout; also the Darent, or Dartford-creek, may boast of very fine Trout; and at Crayford, Bexley, Foot's Cray, Paul's Cray, &c., and near the powder-mills, through and near Darent, and Horton, to Farningham, in Kent; also near Hertford, in the waters belonging to Earl Cowper, Mr. Baker, and other gentlemen; and at Wade's-mill; and in the river Colne, near St. Alban's; and at Whet Hamstead, &c. At Rickmansworth and Watford, in Hertfordshire, and its neighbourhood, are several good Trout streams, and from thence to Uxbridge, in Middlesex; at the latter place, the Angler may indulge himself in angling for Trout, by paying for board and lodging, at the Crown and Cushion, or at the White Horse inns.

Spinning a Minnow, or Bleak.

Having found by long experience, that spinning a Minnow or Bleak is the most killing way of angling for the large or old Trout, in the rivers Thames and Lea, or wherever there are heavy or rapid falls of water wherein Trout are found, I have therefore given,

in the following pages, a very full and particular description of the method of fitting Tackle and baiting hooks for so desirable a purpose.



Minnow baited for Spinning.

Some Anglers use two hooks, when they bait with a Minnow to spin; others, use only one: I shall describe both methods:—First, with two hooks, prepare your gut, swivels, and hooks, in the following manner: Take about nine inches of strong, single or twisted gut, to which tie a long-shank hook, No. 1; about three inches above this hook must be placed another piece of gut, about three inches long, to which you will first tie a hook, No. 8 or 9; this short piece of gut is then to be fastened to the nine-inch piece, as before directed, about three inches above the hook No. 1: the hook No. 8 or 9 will then reach or hang down to the shank of the aforesaid hook, No. 1: to this nine-inch piece of gut add another of the same length, which must be fastened together with small swivels, prepared for the purpose by the fishing-tackle

makers: to those two nine-inch pieces, add a third piece, fastened as before, with swivels; then place a shot on the gut within half an inch of each swivel, and all is complete to receive a Minnow or small Bleak for a bait, which is to be placed on the hooks in the following manner: take the large hook, and enter it in the Minnow's or Bleak's mouth; carry it through its body, bringing the point and barb of the hook out at the side of the tail; you then take the small hook, and enter the point of it into the under part of the Minnow's chaps, passing it through both lips, the point and barb coming out at the outside of the nose; now all is ready to loop on the running line. When one hook only is used, it is always the large size. No. 1: enter the point of this hook under the chaps of the Minnow, and bring it out at the outside of its nose; draw the hook, and about two inches of gut with it, quite through; then take the hook again and pass it under and over the gut in the Minnow's mouth; having so done, it will make a half hitch: now pass the hook through the body of the Minnow, and bring the point and barb out beside the tail; then draw the gut at the mouth tight, and the hook is baited. In making the half hitch, you do away the necessity of using a second hook, for this hitch keeps all fast at the bait's mouth; but it is proper to observe, that in baiting a hook this way, it is best to tie your hook to fine plaited silk, because, in making the half-hitch knot, the gut is liable to break. Ano-

ther way of baiting with a single hook, is as follows: enter the hook, as before described, under the chaps and out at the nose; draw the Minnow up about three inches on the line: then put the hook in its mouth again, and bring it out at the gill; put the hook again into the Minnow's mouth, and pass it through the body, bringing the point and barb out at the tail; draw the slack line, at the mouth, tight; tie the tail and hook together with white silk, and all is complete. Fasten the whole to your running line, to which also a hook swivel should be fixed, and it will spin well, if managed as follows; if you fish across a stream, throw to the opposite side, let the bait sink about a foot, lower the top of your rod, and draw gently across; if you fish down a pool or stream, standing on a bridge or wharfing, cast your bait in near; let it sink about a foot, then draw it up and across with gentle tugs, about a yard at a time; the next time, throw further out, and so continue till you have fished the whole water. If a Trout takes the bait, it generally takes it at the tail, and hooks itself; but it is best to strike when you either see or feel a bite. The Angler should bear in mind the shyness of Trout, and always stand as far from the water as the managing his tackle will permit; this method I pursue myself in all kinds of angling, and have often filled my basket, when others, less careful, have hardly killed a Fish. Some Anglers tie the hook of the swivel round with thread or silk, to prevent the hook which is passed over it slipping back again, which it sometimes does.

When you use a Minnow, as a bait for spinning, it will sometimes want a little bending or curving near the tail, to make it spin freely; this, with attention, the young Angler may soon acquire the art of, but it should be noticed, the straiter the Minnow or Bleak lays on the hook, the better, as it appears most natural; yet, if it will not spin well, it must be bent. Always choose a white bright Minnow, in preference to a large big-bellied one; but if you bait with a Bleak, let it be one of a middling size; recollect, that unless your baits are perfectly fresh and sweet, you must not expect to kill a Trout. These hooks, swivels, &c. for spinning, may be purchased at the principal fishing-tackle shops, ready fitted for the use of such Anglers who do not choose to take the trouble, or have not the leisure, to prepare them.

A Devil; an Artificial Spinning Bait for Trout.

In treating on baits, to troll for Jack and Pike, in another part of this work, some objections are made against using artificial baits; but, by no means do I feel inclined to oppose the fictitious spinning Minnow

in angling for Trout, much less the Artificial Caterpillar or Devil, as they are generally called. This artificial bait has nearly superseded every other of late years, and it is, most certainly, very attractive and killing when used by the skilful and experienced Angler for heavy Trout. These Devils, or Artificial Caterpillars, are made of leather, silk, &c.; of various striped colours, and laced over with gold or brass, and silver thread or wire; and the tail is the shape of a Fish's tail, made either of silver or block tin. About this Devil bait, are placed several small hooks, some hanging loose, and others fastened to it. I have given an engraving of a Devil, with seven hooks, which I consider the best way of placing hooks about it. To fix those hooks, proceed as follows: take two hooks, size No. 10, tied to a short piece of gut, and fasten them to the said Devil, so that they may hang nearly half way down its back, then two others of the same size, fixed so as to hang to the bait's belly. reaching nearly to the tail; and then tie three hooks together, the same size, and fix them to the Devil so that they may hang loose just below the tail. There is a small brass staple at the head of the bait, to which you should fasten a very small box swivel, and to this swivel tie, neatly, a length of choice single gut, and then fasten the single gut to a length of double twisted gut, by another box swivel, and loop the other end of it, to which you fix the running line. *(See the Cut.)*—Note, the swivels are to enable

you to spin the bait, and to do it effectually, the swivels should always be fixed close to the bait, as represented in the cut, whether you bait with a fish or a Devil, which so excites the old Trout, that they seem to lose their cunning, and rush heedlessly to seize their prey. A bait called a Minnow-fly, has lately been used with some success in Trout fishing; this artificial bait is about the size of a bee, it is made of cork covered with tinsel &c. it may be purchased at the fishing tackle shops, it is used in whipping generally.

You can spin a Devil to the greatest advantage from a bridge, or some other eminence, especially when the wind is on your back. The top of your rod should be somewhat lowered, and the bait kept in the middle of the stream or current for some time, then let it drift further down the stream, 30 or 40 yards. At the tail of a mill, whilst the wheel is turning round, is a very likely place for Trout, both early and late; there drop in your bait, close to the apron of the mill, and let it swim down some distance, and by playing it awhile, if any Trout are on the feed, be assured they will take your bait; there is another and most destructive way of fishing for Trout, called cross-fishing. *(See Trimmer Angling.)*

The provincial Angler must not imagine that the London Angler is disappointed of a dish of Trout for want of the necessary skill to take them: neither should he too hastily jeer or challenge the Cockney sportsman, for the fact is, that the greatest adepts, in

the art of angling, are to be found among the inhabitants of the metropolis. Although Trout are not so numerous near London, as in the rivers northward or westward, yet there are several killed by angling, every season, in the river Lea, weighing from three to more than ten pounds each. Every other species of fresh-water Fish are found in the rivers and waters within a few miles of the capital, and thousands are caught annually, with the angle, from one ounce weight to Fish weighing more than twenty pounds each. Here the most experienced and ingenious mechanics are employed in furnishing the various tackle for the Angler's use. The tackle shops also, for a few pence, supply him with different kinds of choice worms, gentles, greaves, &c., for baits; and there are stage coaches going and coming every hour of the day, near several waters, frequented by hundreds who delight in angling; those facilities enable the London Angler to pursue his amusement of angling with very little trouble or expense, and with the best chance of improvement, from the number of his associates. Angling has ever been a favourite sport with the Londoners, or, at least, since the time the worthy and respected Father of Anglers, Izaak Walton, wrote his admired work on Fish and Fishing; who, as a man, a writer, and an Angler, has left a name and character, that his fellow-citizens of London may well quote with pride and exultation. And I am highly pleased, to see that the Work on Fishing,

of the venerable author, has been, of late years, republished, enriched, and embellished in a manner worthy the subject, and equally creditable to the taste of the publisher, and the talent of the artists displayed in the recent editions of Walton's "Complete Angler," sent forth to the public, by several spirited booksellers of the metropolis.*

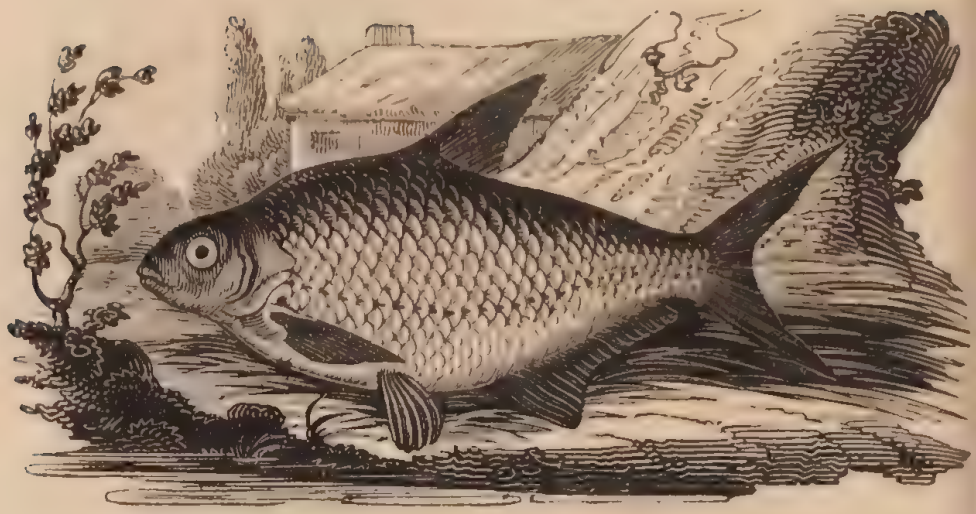
Remarks on Trout.

Trout delight most in sharp shallow streams, sometimes lying under a large stone or shelving clump, at other times swimming, and, seemingly, striving against the stream; they are also found in such cold water, that no other fish can live therein: they will also live in clean gravelly and sandy-bottomed spring ponds, with a stream running through, but will not thrive so fast or breed so well, as in rivers. They spawn in October in most streams, after which they retire into deep still holes, and under shelving banks, and there remain during the Winter season, in the course of which they become very poor, and lose the beautiful spots on their bodies, instead of which, they are much infested with a worm, or water-louse, and the head of Trout at this season seems much too large, aud their whole appearance is lean, lank, and far from that of a beautiful Fish: but when the days lengthen,

* The publisher of this work has lately published Twenty-seven Spirited Illustrations to Walton and Cotton's Complete Angler, and suitable to any edition of the Work.

and the sun gets sufficient power to warm and invigorate the elements; then the Trout seems to take a new lease of his life, leaving his hiding-place, and getting among the gravel in rapid parts of the streams, and with much hearty rubbing, speedily gets rid of his troublesome and filthy companions, who have so long infested, or stuck to him, and then soon recovers his former shape and colours. Among Trout, it is said, there are a few barren females; and though these females do not conduce to replenish the waters, yet they are always fat, and fit for the table. There are several species of Trout: the flesh of some is of a pink colour, others yellowish; and the flesh of the large Trout, found in tide-rivers, is nearly white. In Ireland, they speak of Trout whose stomachs are as thick as a fowl's gizzard. In some part of Wales, Trout are found to be all crooked in the lower part of their bodies, &c. In streams that run through peat bogs and heathy marshes, the Trout are found of a bad dull colour, and are in those parts generally called Grey Trouts.

CHAP. XIV.



The Bream, and Bream Dace, Flat, or Red Eye.

THE Bream is a very bony Fish; they are not very numerous, either in the river Thames or Lea, but abound in the Trent, Wey, Byfleet, and the Mole, and several other rivers; also in Dagenham-breach, and in the Wet-docks, at Blackwall. They are frequently taken in the Spring, during March, April, and May, when angling for Carp with red worms. When angling for Bream, use a gut-line, long rod, quill float, and No. 9 hook, running-tackle, and winch; ground-bait with new grains or greaves, bran and clay, made into balls; or chopped worms, thrown in by handfuls: let the baited hook drag half an inch on the ground in streams, and fish early in the morning, and very late at night. Bream seldom bite in

the middle of the day, during the Summer months, unless the wind blows fresh, or when warm rain descends; they will then take a bait freely all day, especially if the place has been well ground-baited the night before; two red worms put on the hook, or one well-scoured marsh worm is the best bait for Bream, generally speaking; they will take gentles, and sometimes paste, and also wheat and malt slightly baked or parboiled. When you angle for Bream in a river, fish out further in the stream than when angling for Roach, and immediately you observe a bite, strike. If you are angling in quite still water, you may use two rods and lines, to which put small cork floats; cast the baited hook a good way in the water, having first plumbed the depth; the bait should hang just clear of the ground, that a gentle breeze may slowly move it; lay the rod over some rushes, or sags; if those be not there, fix a branch of a tree with a forked top, close to the water, and let the rod rest on it; stand back, and wait patiently and quietly for a bite; by this method, where Bream are plentiful, you may soon fill a basket, for they are a free biting Fish, and though generally considered of little worth, they afford much amusement to the Angler, the bends and broad still parts of rivers, are the places, where Bream like to resort to most. The River Ouse swarms, or is so overrun with Bream, especially in the neighhourhood of Olney in Buckinghamshire, that I have frequently killed from sixty, to one hundred pounds weight in a day's fishing, using two rods and lines.

Remarks on Bream.

The Bream is a very broad Fish, with large scales somewhat like the Carp, but lighter in colour, the head and mouth are small, with a large eye, the tail is broad and forked, and of a dull purple colour, as also the fins; they will breed in still waters as well as in rivers, if the bottom be clay, or loamy, as they prefer still or sluggish streams, to large or rapid rivers: they spawn in May, and will grow to the weight of six pounds. Bream love such places as the Carp and Tench do in rivers; they will also take the same baits, and, like the Carp, struggle hard, particularly when they first feel the hook; therefore, give line freely, before you attempt to turn him, if a heavy Fish; for, like heavy Barbel, they are often very sulky, and hang on the bottom for some time, then rush with violence, under a bank, among weeds, &c.

There is a Fish in the Broads (which are large pieces of water so called, in Norfolk) much like the Bream, which is known there by the name of Bream Flats, Dace or Red Eye; it is a thicker Fish than the Bream, and somewhat hog-backed, like the Perch, and the fins are red: this Fish is generally covered with a slimy substance, and is altogether a very indifferent Fish for the table; they are easily taken with worms, gentles or paste.

In looking into "*Walton's complete Angler*," I find he notices Bream for breeding exceedingly: "Yea, in some ponds so fast, as to over-store them, and

starve other Fish." This observation of the "Father of Anglers," I have proved, in several waters, to be founded in fact, particularly in the East India Docks, Blackwall, where, for the last two years, few large Roach are taken, but the Bream have increased tenfold.

The Nersling or Rudd,

The Rudd, a kind of Roach, all tinged with gold,
Strong, broad, and thick, most lovely to behold.

The Rudd is a very indifferent Fish for the table, as the flesh is soft and full of bones: in shape and colour it is much like the Roach, but broader: the body and gills are tinged and bronzed with gold: the belly, fins, and tail, are a bright red, or vermilion, the eye more yellow than the Roach. They thrive best in ponds, but seldom exceed a pound in weight; they will take red worms, paste, and gentles, during Summer: use a gut or hair line, quill float, No. 10 or 11 hook, and angle at bottom; in every respect, act the same as when fishing for Roach or Dace.

It is generally supposed that the Rudd is bred between the Bream and Roach. Roach, Rudd, and Bream are certainly very much alike: the Rudd spawn about April, and thrive in ponds, or still waters, with gravelly bottoms, but get poor, and full of green insects, in filthy or muddy ponds. The rivers Thames and Lea have Rudd, but not in great numbers; they abound in Dagenham Breach, and in the ponds in Wanstead Park.

Remarks on Rudd.

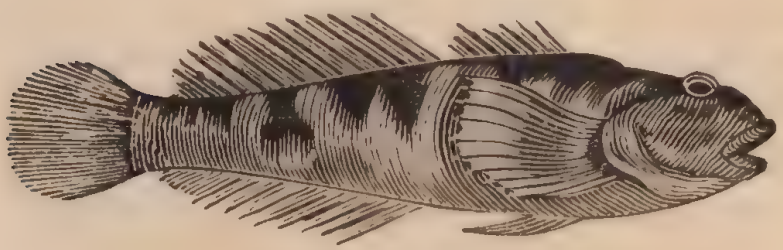
I have no doubt that the Fish called a Rudd is a true Roach, but a little altered in shape, &c., by being put into ponds not congenial to their habits and nature; for I have known ponds stocked with Roach from rivers, and in a few years, none were to be found but numerous Rudd. Previous to the Roach being put into the same pond, a Rudd was never seen, neither were there any Bream. This fact I have witnessed many times, particularly during the twenty years I have angled in the ponds in Tilney Park, Wanstead; I have also caught Roach in rivers, when out of season, and when in a sickly state, extremely like the pond-Rudd, which makes me conclude, that they are really Roach, though degenerated, perhaps, from the nature of the water they are placed in, that is from a healthy stream, they are removed to a foul stagnant pond, where leaves from surrounding Trees fall in, and rot with the weeds for many succeeding years.

Pope, or Ruff.

The Pope or Ruff is of the Perch species, and much like the Perch in its habits, form, and flavour, being firm and well-tasted, though they never grow so large; they are taken with worms and gentles, but are rarely to be met with in the vicinity of London, except in the little river Mole. There are many in the Isis, near Oxford; the river Cam, near Cambridge; also in the Trent, and great numbers in the river Yare in Norfolk. Put two No. 9 hooks on the line, and fish within a foot of the bottom: they bite from March till September, and spawn some time in April, but seldom grow to the length of seven inches; they delight in quick gravelly eddies, and about wharfings. The best bait is a red worm; ground-bait with handfuls of small gravel or road-sand thrown gently in, occasionally, at the spot where you are fishing.

I have caught a few Pope or Ruff at Shepperton,

on the shallows close to the ferry-boat, while angling for Gudgeons with a No. 10 hook, baited with a small red worm; fishing near the bottom with one hook I find more successful than in using two: if two are used, let the bottom one be No. 9, and gently touch the bottom, the other No. 10, and so fixed on the line as to be about nine or ten inches above. Pope or Ruff are a very lively free-biting little Fish, and afford the Young Angler much amusement; the eye, head, shoulders, and dorsal fin, (which it erects when alarmed) are much like the Perch; the tail and tail-end of the body is shaped and spotted or waved exactly like a Gudgeon.—Note, in baiting a hook for Pope or Ruff, take pains to carry the worm well up the hook and shank, that but little of the tail may hang loose, or it will be nibbled off.—*See fishing for Gudgeon.*



The Bull-Head, or Miller's Thumb.

This is a most singular-formed Fish, of the Gudgeon species, and apparently without scales, they being very small, and are different from any other fresh-water Fish I am acquainted with: the head

is very large and flat, resembling a toad, the mouth very wide, the eyes large and projecting, the body and tail are of a dusky brown colour, and waved or spotted like a Gudgeon; they seldom exceed five or six inches in length: they delight to lie on stones at the bottom of shallow rivers, in hot weather, where you may catch them with a small piece of red worm put on a little hook, with a shot to sink the bait, which they will very readily take, without betraying any fear; therefore, any short line and rod does for this sport. There are a great many Bull-heads, or Miller's-thumbs, in the New River. I have known more than seven dozen taken in a day out of this river, near Ware. Some persons eat them fried, after having the head cut off, and speak of the dish with applause. They will answer for baiting a night-line for Eels, when other small Fish are not to be procured; but they should be alive. They spawn in May.

Heron.

CHAP. XV.

The Eel.

The Silver Eel in shining volumes roll'd.

Eels are found in all the rivers, canals, docks, &c., near London, in great numbers, and remarkably fine in size and flavour; they are taken with rod and floated line, leger-line, night-lines, dead-lines, and bobbing, also with the spear, and by sniggling.

When angling for Eels with a floated line, those made of twisted gut, strong single gut, or twisted hair, are to be preferred; any common rod, of sufficient length, will do, because Eels will generally gorge the bait and hook themselves; put a cork float on the line, and use a No. 8 hook, and bait with a piece of

lob worm, half a marsh worm, or a whole red worm or small brandling: let the baited hook lay on the ground, which you may tell is the case if the float lies upon its side on the water, instead of standing up. When Eels bite, they will draw the float under water; there let it remain a moment, then strike, and lift, or weigh out your prize. If you put more than one hook on your line, place them about a foot apart.—Note, immediately you get an Eel on shore, clap your foot on it, and there keep it, till you have separated its back-bone with a knife, or a pair of scissors, which you should always have ready, when fishing for Eels; for immediately an Eel is taken from the water, it coils up, and twists your line in numerous knots, which can only be prevented by cutting through its back-bone; you may then take away the hook without danger.

The body of Eels is covered with a slimy mucous substance, so that you cannot hold them in your hand until they are disabled; for which purpose, I find sharp-pointed scissors more useful than a knife; and, as Eels generally gorge the baited hook, therefore, without much care, if you use a knife to lay open the Eel's throat, &c., you are likely to cut the gut, or whatever the hook may be tied to; but if you enter one blade of the scissors inside of the Eel's mouth, the other on the outside, and cut down to where the hook lodges, you may dislodge it, without cutting the material to which it is tied.

Leger lines may be used with much success in fishing for Eels, both by day and night, if fitted up as

follows: first, take two yards of tolerable fine gimp, and make a loop at each end of it; then tie a No. 7 hook to about a foot of fine gimp: at the other end make a loop; then loop it on to the aforesaid two yards of gimp, which I call a leger trace; about eighteen inches (that is, from the end looped to the hook length,) firmly fix a swan shot; then pass, from the other end of the trace, a flat leger lead down to the shot, which shot is to prevent the lead from slipping any lower down, or on the bait; then fasten the trace to a trolling line, with the same rod and winch as used for Jack-fishing: bait the hook with a well-scoured small lob or large marsh worm, securely placed on the hook, that the Eel may not be able to suck it off without taking the hook in its mouth. Now, cast in the baited hook in the middle of a stream, or in strong eddies, where the largest Eels that feed by day are to be found, especially when the waters are low, or very bright; in such places, a floated line does not answer, because it is carried away by the current, or engulphed in the eddies, some Anglers make their leger-traces, and tie their hooks to choice twisted gut, which I think preferable to gimp.

In leger-fishing, having cast in the bait, lay down your rod (having first unlocked the winch;) you will perceive a bite by the shaking of the rod, and pulling of the line; give plenty of time before you strike, for Eels will generally hook themselves, if the hasty Angler does not draw the bait from them. Several lines and rods may be managed by one Angler. Some Anglers make their

leger lines of fine twisted small cord, and use a bank runner instead, of a winch, for cheapness.

Note.—For all kinds of Eel fishing, many experienced Anglers tie their hooks to a very fine gimp, to prevent the Eels from biting off the hook, which they are enabled to do, if tied to gut or hair, by their numerous sharp teeth, especially the larger Eels. The hardness of the gimp makes them soon desist; the gimp also is much less likely to kink or tangle: the vexation and loss of time caused by breaking and entangling of the line, while Eel fishing, every experienced Angler must have felt.

When leger-fishing, at night, you must carry with you a small portable lantern, to enable you to bait your hook, &c.—Note, while so fishing at night, it is sometimes advisable to bait with a small live Fish instead of a worm, if the Eels are large, or the place contains Jack; if more than one line is used, it is best to bait with different baits, or generally with such baits as you find most killing. Many Eels are caught by this mode of fishing, both by night and day, using proper baits and tackle fit for the purpose, when you have hooked them, get them on shore as soon as possible, for you cannot tire Eels by playing them like other Fish; on the contrary, they very often get round weeds or rushes so tight that they generally break your hook, line, or rod. Some Anglers use two hooks on leger lines, looping the top one about two feet above the bottom one; and to prevent it moving from its proper place, fix a shot close above and below it, in the way which you will see is

done to prevent the lead slipping down, in the cut of Angling Apparatus, fig. 3. Leger-fishing is a killing mode of angling in large deep waters, tide rivers, docks, sea harbours, &c. Eels are also taken with dead lines. *(See Flounder-fishing.)*

Bobbing for Eels.

Bobbing for Eels is practised in a boat, with a large bunch of worms suspended by a strong cord from a pole or stout rod, in the following manner. First of all, you must procure a large quantity of worms, (marsh and blue-headed worms are better than lobs, though small lobs will do,) and string them on worsted or coarse thread, by passing a needle, which you fasten to coarse thread or worsted, through them from head to tail, until you have as many strung as will form a bunch as large as a good sized turnip; then fasten them on the lines, so that all the ends may hang level. In the middle is placed a piece of lead, of a conical or bell form, the broad end downwards, which may be got at any of the fishing tackle shops, made for the purpose; thus prepared, cast the baits into the water, gently; let them sink to the bottom, and then keep raising them a few inches from the ground, and dropping them again, until you have a bite, which is easily perceived, as the Eel tugs very strongly: be as expert as possible, and, at the same time, steady in raising your line, so that your Fish, in dropping off, may fall into the boat. Immense numbers are taken by

this method. During the hot weather, always fish or bob in shoal, or rather shallow water, and out of the stream; during the night most are taken, but they will lay hold freely in the day time. Rivers, in which the tide flows, afford the best success, particularly during ebb tide.—Note, those who will take the additional trouble of threadling red worms instead of any others, will increase their sport four-fold.

Spearing and Sniggling, or Brogling for Eels.

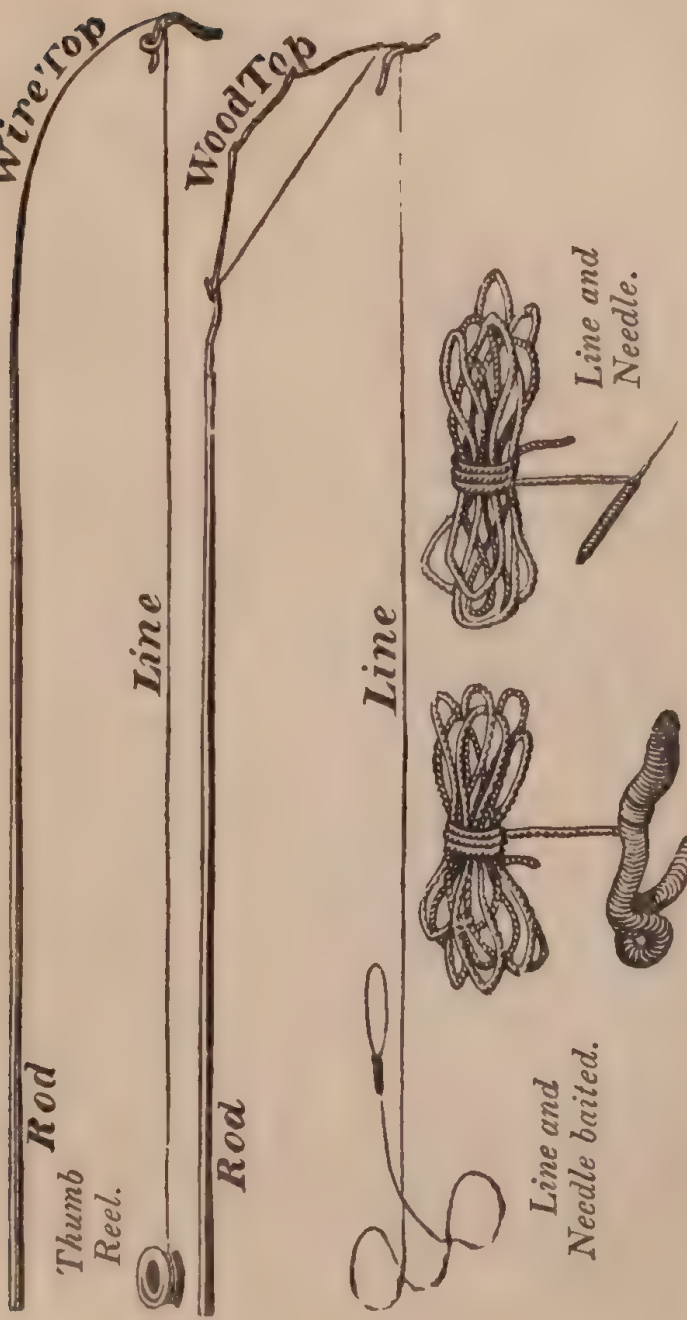
By sniggling, many good Eels are taken in rivers and other waters, during the Spring and Summer months; they are also taken by spearing, which is done by striking the spear among weeds and soft sandy bottoms of rivers, ponds, and ditches; many fine Eels are procured by this method. Those spears are sold at all the fishing tackle shops, and are known by the name of Eel-spears.

Sniggling for Eels.

The art of sniggling is somewhat difficult to describe; yet as it is a most valuable, and, indeed, the only way, that can be practised in the day time to take large Eels by baits, I shall bestow every pains to explain the method pursued in sniggling, and illustrate the same with cuts representing the needle, line, &c., employed in this species of fishing. In place of a hook, a stout needle is used; that kind with which tailors stitch button-holes, and the small needle, used by sail-makers, are the best; they should not exceed

two inches in length: before you use them, break off about the eighth of an inch of the point, which strengthens the needle, and still leaves it sufficiently sharp for the purpose of sniggling. A few yards of whip, or any small cord, wound on a thumb-winder, or any thing else, is sufficient for the line; but the same quantity of stout platted silk, such as is used in trolling for Pike, is far superior: for a rod, a branch of willow, or hazel, near three yards long, is generally used; the small end being bent nearly to a half-circle, and confined to that shape by tying a string near the point, and fastening the other end of it near the middle of the rod. A friend of mine has much improved the rod, by using about half-a-yard of stout bell-wire, either of copper, brass, or iron, for the bend, or circle, at the top, which does away entirely the necessity of tying across with string; and this wire also passes through the water with less resistance than wood; and you can have a fine point to the wire, consequently you are not so liable to injure the worm when conveying it to the hole. You can bend the wire-top to the shape most proper to convey your bait to a hole, which is often wanted when sniggling, from the difficulty of getting near the place where an Eel is thought to be. *(See the Cut of a Rod with a wire top, Thumb-reel and line.)*

SNIGGLING APPARATUS.



Note.—The cuts of sniggling-rods, &c. are the most simple apparatus for taking Eels by sniggling. In respect to tops for sniggling-rods, some Anglers use them made of hickery, about sixteen inches long, which consists of three pieces joined together, with two neat brass hinges, similar to those used in making folding rules; by the aid of those hinges, these tops may be formed or bent to any shape most likely to enable the Angler to place the worm where an Eel is suspected to lay. This top is very convenient to carry, for, when folded up, it will lay in your pocket tackle-book. Those who use these folding tops, have them made to fit the second top joint of their general fishing rod, so that the same rod can be used for every kind of angling, except whipping with flies. Those who prefer the wire for sniggling-tops, may conveniently carry a length or two in the butt of their rods. I have killed many Eels by sniggling, using my walking stick for the rod, after tying to the thin end of it about half a yard of the said stout bell-wire: to prevent the wire lacerating the worm too much, while conducting it in search of an Eel, it should be blunted, or tie a silk or thread round the point end, which will prevent it penetrating too far in and destroying your worm. A little experience in sniggling will enable the Angler to select which he thinks the best among those tops enumerated.

How to tie on the Needle, and bait it.

To whip or tie the needle to the line is done with some silk, waxed with shoe-maker's wax, first laying the end of the line nearly half-way down the needle, within a quarter of an inch of the eye or thick end, and tying it strongly on; the line will then hang from about the middle of the needle, leaving the smaller end quite bare, and also a quarter of an inch of the larger. In baiting the needle, enter the thick end thereof into the worm, near the tail, and carry it up near to the head: then draw the worm as much back as will completely cover the needle; the line will then hang from the tail, and the head will be presented to the Eel. The best rod for sniggling is about two yards of light stiff bamboo; to the top of which tie about half a yard of wire, as before described, which you can readily bend to the shape most convenient for carrying the bait to any place you wish. Some Snigglers put the needle into the worm near the head, so that the tail is presented to the Eel, which, from its moving or twisting about, they think is more likely to entice the Eel to bite. The worms proper for sniggling are tough and well-scoured lob-worms, marl-worms, or very large marsh-worms, equally tough and well-scoured, for those large Eels will seldom take a worm that is just dug from the earth; and besides, if not well scoured, the worm is apt to break while you are preparing it with the needle.

Places where large Eels lie, and the way to take them.

During the Spring and Summer months, especially when the water, in rivers, lakes, ponds, ditches, &c., is much decreased, is the time to expect most sport by sniggling; for, at such times, Eels lie in holes in the banks of rivers, and other waters, not far below the surface, and between the planks of wharfings, the boards that form the aprons of mill-tails, and between any planks and boards about wooden-bridges and flood-gates; under and between large stones about mill-pools, and also in ditches which are nearly dry, and have communication with rivers and streams. The places in the banks proper to offer a bait at, may be known by observing holes, some nearly as large as rat holes, and some smaller. While sniggling, present your bait to every hole and crevice you meet with, a little below the surface of the water. Sometimes, after you have hooked an Eel, it will prove too large to be pulled out, recourse is then had to digging him out, if in a bank; if between boards or planks, it is often found necessary to saw or force asunder those obstructions. Having met with a place likely to contain an Eel, bait the needle as before directed; hold it in your left hand, and fix the point of the wire, or the point of the bent rod, lightly into the worm, at the tail end, and convey the head end of the worm just within the hole or crevice, where you suspect an Eel lies, (all the while holding the line in

your left hand, loosening as much as is necessary to let the bait reach the said hole or crevice,) hold your bait still a few minutes, and if the Eel is inclined to take it, you will feel him dragging the worm further in the hole. When the Eel takes hold of your worm, it immediately slips off the rod, which, as before observed, is only made use of to convey the bait to the place where you expect to find an Eel. This, which is called a *bite*, in other modes of angling, is, in this case, called a *take-off*, from the Eel taking or slipping the worm off the point of the rod. Do not check it, but give him two minutes or more to gorge, then strike smartly, and you will fix the needle across his stomach or throat. Do not pull, but only hold the line tight, and they, generally, soon make their appearance; you then will, of course, lift the Eel out, and secure him in your bag or basket.

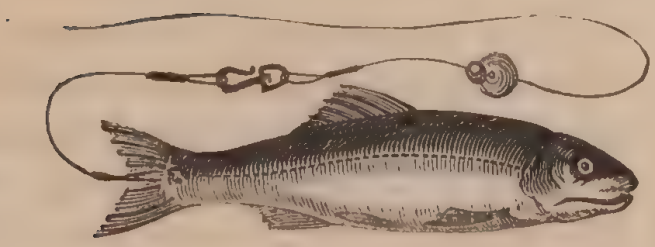
The best time to fish for Eels is in the day, immediately the water is settled after a flood, and during soft showery and hot gloomy weather, and after a night of thunder and lightning, &c. Recollect, when you have caught an Eel to put your foot on it, and sever the back bone, near the head, with a knife, which completely disables him; you may then keep the line clear till you have unhooked him; for they are covered with a slimy substance, which prevents your holding them, and unless speedily disabled by cutting, as above, they entangle the line in endless confusion. The month of May is the best month in the year for catching Eels, from morning till night,

and all night. Large Eels, especially those caught in rivers, are considered nutritious food, but, at the same time, are known to be hard of digestion; therefore, those who attend to their health as well as gratifying their palate, should be careful that this Fish is well dressed, or thoroughly done, before it is eaten; to effect which, they should be parboiled before they are spit-chucked, (commonly called pitch-cocked), fried, broiled, or baked in a pie.

Observations on Eels.

Eels live many years, and grow to a very large size, even to measure a yard and a half in length, and weighing more than fifteen pounds. They are fond of water with a muddy or sandy bottom, but yet they do not love muddy water; and, if in a river, they prefer the still parts, lying under large chalkstones, and stumps or roots of trees, between piles, planking, or in holes in the banks, from which they seldom move during the day. In Winter, they coil themselves up, and lie in numbers together, buried in the mud and sand, in a torpid state, until the Spring. So tenacious are Eels of life, that they will live many days out of water and without food, until they are almost putrid and become offensive.

CHAP. XVI.



Directions for fitting, baiting, and laying Night and Chain Lines, for Eels.

LARGE Eels very seldom take a bait in the day time, except they are sniggled for, but run and feed freely during the night, (especially when very dark); therefore, the Angler who wishes to furnish his own, or a friend's table, with fine Eels, must take the trouble of laying night lines for them, fitted, baited, &c. in the following manner:

For the peg or single line, take about ten yards of chalk line, lay-cord, or strong whip cord; but four strands of Dutch twine, platted together, make a line much superior to any other for strength, and is also much less inclined to kinkle or tangle. Tie the line to a stout peg stick, which you fix firmly in the ground, then fasten the length of ten inches of gimp, platted silk, or three strands of platted Dutch twine, or whatever your hook is tied to, to the line, either with a loop or a draw slip-knot; but if you fit your line with a stout hook swivel, to hang the hook link

on, it is better than any other way; about two or three inches above the loop or swivel, place a bullet or a leger lead on the line, to sink the bait, and a swan shot before it, to keep the bullet from slipping down. *(See the Cut.)* The proper hooks for this mode of Eel-fishing, are single or double small-sized Eel hooks. The single, when a worm or piece of Lamprey, is used for a bait; and the double, when a small Fish is used for a bait. Small Roach, Dace, Bleak, or Gudgeons, about four inches long, are all proper baits, and also Miller's Thumbs, Stone Loach, and pieces of Lamprey Eels; but small Gudgeons and Bleak I prefer, for baits, to every other, finding them a killing bait in most waters. Note, the intent of putting a perforated bullet or leger lead, is to suffer the Eel to take the bait without feeling any check, which would not be the case if the lead had not a hole through it; for, in that case, when the Eel draws the bait, it would feel the weight of the lead, and, probably, would be alarmed, and leave it; but when there is a hole through the bullet or leger lead, the bait and line then moves without dragging away either the perforated bullet or leger.

When you bait the hook with either of the above enumerated Fish, take a baiting needle and fix it to the loop of the gimp, or what the hook is tied to; enter the point of the needle in the bait-fish's mouth, bring it out at the tail, and draw till the hooks are brought to lay close on each side the bait's mouth *(see the Cut)*; then tie the bait-fish just above the tail with some

strong thread, to keep the gimp, or whatever the hooks are fastened to, from drawing the hooks out of their proper place, or position, and all will be right. If you bait with Lamprey, they should be pieces about one or two inches long.

Note.—That part which contains the roe is the most enticing. I have not found Lamprey a good bait for Eels in any other rivers but those into which the tide flows, yet, in them, it is a very killing bait; neither does it answer in any ponds where I have tried it. If you use worms for baits, they should be well scoured, large lob-worms, put on a single hook, in the following manner; but observe, that a short shanked hook is to be preferred.

Take a long minnow baiting-needle, and fix it to the gimp, or what the hook is tied to; enter the point of the needle close to the tail of the worm, and bring it out at its head; draw till the shank of the hook is completely covered, taking care also that the point and barb of the hook are hid or covered in the worm; but let no more than a quarter of an inch of the worm hang loose from the point of the hook; for, when much is left loose, Eels are apt to nibble it off, and avoid taking the part which contains the hook. Some Anglers bait their hook by entering the point of the needle at the head of the worm, instead of the tail, which I prefer, because the hook then lays in the thickest part of the worm, and, therefore, the point and barb are less likely to show or be felt, while the Eel is sucking in the bait.—Note, hooks baited with worms are very frequently bit and mutilated by small Eels, Minnows, &c.

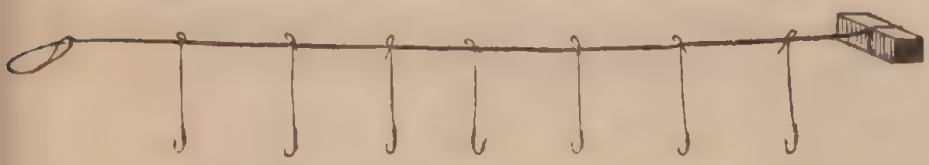
therefore prefer Fish for baits, unless the water you lay in abounds with Trout, Carp, or Chub, who will all take a worm-bait at night; in which case, bait some of the hooks with worms, and others with Fish.

In ponds and other still waters, with night lines, I have taken large Eels with live frogs and large snails for baits, but have not found them to answer in rivers; I have also used about two-inch pieces of fowl's guts par-boiled put on my hooks, the same way as described with pieces of Lampreys: Eels will certainly take this bait freely in ponds, at night, but I have not tried it much in rivers.

To lay Eel Lines.

Choose those parts of rivers or waters where the baited hook is not likely to be buried in the mud, or entangled in heavy and strong beds of weeds; and, if the lines were fastened to bank-runners, instead of peg-sticks, the Angler would sustain much less loss of lines, hooks, and Eels, as the line gives way gradually from the runner, and, consequently, seldom gets twisted, or checks a Fish when he is taking the bait, which will occur when the spare line is laid in coils. Though Eels generally lay, during the day, among weeds, in holes or in the mud, yet, when they run, and are on the feed at night, they come to the clean scours, and on the sandy or gravelly parts of the stream, near beds of weeds, chalk stones, large lumps of earth that have parted from the banks, &c.; in such parts lay your lines. Some Anglers will take the trouble to clear a sufficient space in the middle of a large bed of weeds to lay lines in, and they are

generally well paid for their trouble; and those who lay twenty hooks baited, and each hook fastened to a single line, will take more Eels than those who lay twice the number of baited hooks, fastened to a chain line.—Note, when chain lines are laid, there is no occasion for bullets on the lines, because the bricks or turfs keep them in their places, which is on the bottom or ground.—*(See the Cut.)*



Chain Line.

The Chain Line is so named, from having a number of hooks baited and tied to it, and is fitted in the following manner: take from twelve to twenty yards, according to the number of hooks you intend to fasten to it, of stout cord, about the size of the line which windows are hung with; these sash lines are used by some Anglers; others use thin clothes' lines, or roasting jack line, either of which will do: fasten one end of the line by a loop to a brick, or a piece of square turf, cut from a field or bank *(See the Cut:)* the hooks which you intend to bait should be tied to about half a yard or less, of trolling line, gimp, platted Dutch twine, or some other strong thin cord, and baited in the same manner as already described for the single, or peg-line, fastening the baited hooks to the large stout

line, about three feet a-part, with a slip draw knot, then the hooks will hang free from each other; then fasten the other end of the large line to another brick, or clump of turf, and all is ready to cast or lay in the water.—Note, Eels will run and take a bait at night, from March until the latter end of November, unless when the moon shines very bright, during which nights the Angler had better keep his lines and baits in store for dark nights, especially the first week of a new moon and the last of an old one, at which time he will do well to lay his lines every night.

To cast in Chain Lines, and take them up.

If the nights are cold, cast your line in so that it will lay near the side of, or under the bank, rather than in a shallow, or current, because the Eels can then see the bait, and take it close to their holes, for they will not move or run far, during cold nights. When you lay chain lines in running waters, cast in the first brick up the stream, the other down; the current will then keep the hooks hanging free from each other.

When you come to take up chain lines, you must first provide yourself with stout drag hooks (sold at all the fishing-tackle shops) fastened to plenty of strong cord; throw in the hooks over the part where you have placed the line in the water, and draw it to the shore. Single lines may be drawn in by the hand, or taken in by a forked stick, or trimmer rod,

by putting the fork under the line near the hooks, and hoisting it up.

On laying Lines for Eels; also on Baits, Hooks, and the proper time to lay and take them up, to dry, cleanse them, &c.

In directing the Angler to fasten his chain line to bricks, stones, or lumps of earth, it applies chiefly to rivers and other waters that are public, or much attended by Anglers, boat fishermen, bargemen, &c. because in such waters, he is likely to have his lines discovered if they are fastened to piles, branches of trees, or stakes; therefore, the fastening to bricks, &c., is the safest way; but in waters where the Angler feels confident all will be secure, he can often lay his baited chain lines to more advantage with the assistance of a second person in a boat, &c. If the baits are well taken by good Eels, they will often drag the line, bricks and all, a considerable distance from the place they were cast in, and if they do not tear or twist themselves off, they will often entangle the line, hooks, and themselves, among heavy beds of weeds, and give infinite trouble to the Angler in recovering and fitting his line for another night's fishing.

Therefore, those who live near where they lay their lines, had better begin to take them up soon after twelve at night; for, by that hour, if Eels run, they will certainly have taken the bait, and then the line, hooks, &c., are but little confused; neither will a

good Eel have had time to get away, for you should know, they never cease trying, for many hours after they are hooked to escape, which they frequently do when hooked in the throat or mouth; for, by their continually twisting and struggling, they rip the hook through the tender parts of the throat or mouth; but if they have it in their maw or stomach, and the tackle be good, their most violent exertions will be in vain.

In large ditches and narrow streams, that have communication with rivers, good Eels are often to be found; and if not broader than the Angler can leap with the assistance of a leaping pole, and the said ditch or stream is protected, the Angler should lay his line right across, fastening each end to stakes on the opposite banks.

Note.—In putting in those stakes, do not fix them in a direct line, opposite each other, but a yard or more, (according to the number of hooks and length of line you use) below, so that the line and hooks may lay obliquely across the water, which allows room for more baited hooks than if laid in a straight line; and also I have found my baited hooks do more execution thus laid, for the Eels run more on the side of sharp streams than in the middle. This way of fastening lines to stakes should always be preferred, where it can be done; or when laying at the end of mill-tail streams, or in the shallow parts or pools of water, formed from falls of water over precipices, flood gates, &c.; in such places, with a boat, you can

place the baited hooks to the best advantage, and you know where to search for them without loss of time; for when fastened to any thing moveable, you often have a great deal of trouble in recovering your line, and that frequently fifty yards or more from whence you have laid it; and when you have brought it to hand, it is such a confused mass of weeds, Eels, and the slime from those which have twisted off, that hardly any other than the most patient of Anglers would find resolution enough to untwist or disentangle the number of knots, which his line and hooks are tied in; but this ought to be done immediately, and the line cleared and washed from all impurities, and carefully dried, or it soon rots.

When you cast in the water, your chain line, which is made fast to bricks, or any thing else, cast in the first brick underhanded, up the stream, and the other down, or across the stream; then make a note in your pocket-book of something on the bank, or some other object, that you may readily find it again.

When laying lines from a boat, fasten one end of the line (having all your hooks first baited) to a stake, brick, or whatever you intend; then push off the boat, and let the hooks drop in the water, regularly, as the boat goes down the stream, until they are all out; then fasten the other end of your line. This is the way the fishermen, on various parts of the sea coast, lay their short lines, called trots. In regard to baits for Eel lines, after much

practice and experience, I can aver, that worms are the least to be depended on for killing large Eels, and that when the Angler lays in large rivers, or tide rivers, if he can procure small Gudgeons, Dace, Bleak, large white Minnows (the Minnows should not be with spawn,) and Lamprey Eels, he then possesses the best and most killing baits. I have killed a great many large Eels in docks, among the shipping, and also in ponds, by baiting my night lines with chicken's guts, which I first parboil, and then sprinkle with salt; and also with boiled salt beef, which I cut in shape like a Fish, before I put it on my hook. Some Anglers think Fish object to every thing salt; but this opinion is erroneous, for I have had excellent sport when I have laid my fish-baits, (that have not been touched the first night,) on the second night, having let them lay separate all day, first having sprinkled them with salt.

Note.—In choosing Eel hooks, prefer the single ones whose shank is similar to the Kirby hook, to those which have a loop shank; because when baited, especially with a worm, it tears the bait less, and also is less likely to be felt while the Eel is swallowing it. And further observe, to choose hooks that are narrow in the bend, and never use them too large; for hooks well manufactured and of good shape, of the sizes No. 6, for baiting with Fish, or those of No. 7, single for worms, will kill Eels of any size, while larger hooks tear or mutilate the bait, and standing rank frequently cause alarm or suspicion in the Eels,

and they then often suck part of the bait away, but very seldom suffer the hook to come within their mouths. I have seen pieces of sharp thorn tied to Eel lines, the same as a needle is to a sniggling line, and baited with worms laid at night in the Thames, and both Eels and Flounders caught with them, which is done by the thorn getting across the throat or stomach of the Eel or Flounder, when swallowed.

Note.—The proper time to lay or put single or chain lines in the water for Eels, &c., is just as the sun is setting; at which time, Eels (large ones especially) begin to move from their holes, or other places of shelter, in search of food; therefore, according to the number of baited hooks you intend laying, begin to bait them in time, because it takes a considerable time to bait some score of hooks, and it is necessary they should be in the water at sun set, for you must know that the fore part of the night is better than the latter, and, as I have before observed, the sooner after twelve o'clock the lines are taken up the better.

Lamprey Eel.

The Lamprey Eel is of the shape of the Lamprey or Seven Eyes, but of a much larger size, being taken sometimes nearly three feet long; the skin is of a blackish colour, and full of lightish spots; it has no bones, but it has a gristle down the back. They come from the sea to spawn in fresh water rivers, in the month of March, and deposit their spawn in

holes made in a gravelly or sandy bottom. In the month of April, after leaving their spawn, they quit the fresh water again for the sea; in about three months, the spawn becomes a brood of Lampreys, about four or five inches long. The Lamprey Eel is frequently caught in the river Severn, near Gloucester, while angling for Gudgeons, Perch, Flounders, &c., with a worm.

The Lamprey, Lampern, or Seven Eyes.

This Fish is about a foot long; the back is dark, and the belly white, much resembling the silver Eel: they have seven holes, like shot holes, on each side of the head. They are found in the Thames about Brentford, Richmond, and other places, in March and April, when they are in the best state, but they are not considered wholesome food: they have no bones in their bodies, not even a back bone, but, in its place, a sort of gristly substance. The Lamprey is a most killing bait for Eels, put on a night line or trimmer, in pieces about an inch and a half long: they are sometimes caught by the Angler in the Thames, and other large rivers, that have a communication with the sea, (to which the Lamprey more properly belongs,) in the Spring, when fishing with a worm; but they are never angled for purposely in any place that I am acquainted with. After spawning, they hasten again to the sea, leaving their brood in the sand or gravel of rivers. This Fish, Pliny informs us, will

live sixty years, and may be trained so as to become quite tame: the Roman ladies used them as pets, and suspended jewels and ear-rings to their gills. Hortensius, the orator, also kept a tame one, and wept at its death.

Naturalists reckon eight species of Lampreys, but three only are noticed in general by Anglers, viz. the Lamprey or Seven Eyes, the blind Lamprey, and the Lamprey Eel. The Blind Lamprey is very small not larger than a lob-worm; the body is divided into rings, like worms; its mouth is round and open, but it has neither teeth nor tongue: it has a hole on the head, and seven on each side. This Lamprey is only valuable as a bait for Eels, laid as night lines. Lampreys may be bought of the Thames Fishermen at the Spotted Dog public-house, Strand-lane, in the Strand; and are certainly the best bait for Eels, laid with lines at night, in some parts of the Lea, say within ten miles of London.

CHAP. XVII.

The Fluke or Flounder, and Smelt.

The Flounder is seldom found but in rivers where the tide flows, or those which have connection with the

sea, but they remain and breed in fresh water streams; they are generally considered a very sweet Fish, light and easy of digestion. In the Docks at Blackwall, the City Canal, and in the Commercial and other Docks, &c., on the opposite side of the river, they are taken either with dead-lines, legers, or floated-lines in the same manner as Eels; in fact, when you angle for Eels in these parts, you angle for Flounders also, as they will both take the same baits, and at the same season; it also frequently happens that you take both Flounders and Eels, promiscuously, when fishing for Eels with a floated line, on which you may put two or three hooks, about nine inches above each other.—*See fishing for Eels with a floated line.*

The colour of the Flounder is generally a dark mottled olive, a few of them have some dirty yellow spots on them, they spawn about May, and are in season all the year after. Those caught in the river Thames are very sweet and firm; and, I think, superior to any that are brought to market from the sea. They delight to lie among sand, gravelly banks, and bottoms: they will likewise thrive in clean gravelly ponds, particularly if a stream runs through them.

Note, when angling for Flounders in rivers near the sea, you will meet with Flounders much larger than those we take near London; therefore, in such case, use a hook of No. 6 or 7, for, in some tide rivers, you may find Flounders weighing from one to two pounds a piece; and they will take a bait during

almost every month in the year. The best baits for Flounders are red worms, brandlings, and small marsh worms.

How to angle for Smelts, and Observations thereon.

Smelts are well known as a most delicious Fish for the table. They are of an elegant shape, covered with loose white scales; the back is of a dark hue, but the sides and belly are almost transparent, and shine like silver; the eyes have also the same silvery appearance; their jaws and tongue have many teeth, and very large for so small a Fish. Though they arrive twice every year in the Thames, that is, in March and July, yet, it is said, they do not get above London Bridge during their last visit. When they arrive, if the season is favourable for the Fishermen to work their nets, they then take, or rather used to take, an immense quantity of them, which enabled the poor Fisherman to discharge some of the debts he unavoidably contracts in Winter, in consequence of his not being able to labour in his vocation. Between London Bridge and Lambeth, is the principal place for taking Smelts in nets; but, for the last twenty years past, those poor Fishermen have been deprived of their resource for paying off the debts of Winter, by the Smelts not making their annual appearance in the river Thames, previous to the time above alluded to. The river used to swarm with this delicious Fish. In July, we used to begin angling for Smelts, in the various wet docks, below bridge; but at the floating

timber, laying at Limehouse hole, was a favourite place for Smelt-fishing; from those timbers a hundred dozen have frequently been taken in a day. Then again, Perry's Dock, Blackwall, now belonging to the East India Company, was a place for Smelts in those days!—From this place, it was noways unusual for an expert Angler to carry away upwards of twenty dozen of fine Smelts. I have, very frequently, taken five or six dozen before eight o'clock in the morning, and returned home to breakfast, then residing about two miles from the spot; but this dock, as well as the river, is nearly deserted by the Smelts; in fact, there has been so few, for several years past, that myself and many others, have entirely declined troubling ourselves about them. The only place, at present, they are sought after, is in the City Canal, but they are very small in size, and few in number. I have made much inquiry on the subject of the Smelts not visiting, as usual, the river Thames, but without any satisfactory result.

Smelts are caught by angling in the following manner: you must have an exceeding strong and flexible top to your rod, strong gut line, heavy float, and from ten to twelve or more hooks, about eight or nine inches apart—the hooks will stand better from the line if tied on a fine bristle, about six inches long. Use No. 8 or 9 hooks; the best baits are a small piece of the belly of an Eel, and pieces of a Smelt, the bottom hook touching the ground.—Note, when they bite, they throw the float up—all other Fish pull it down:

strike immediately and strong. Smelts will sometimes take blood worms, Shrimps, or pieces of Lobsters, &c., and also red worms. The pieces of Smelt or Eel for bait, should be about the size of a finger-nail.*

They are very frequently fished for without a float, but with hooks, lines, &c. as above described, and with a small piece of lead at bottom which you occasionally let dip or touch the ground, gently raising and sinking it, till you feel a bite: this is called dip-fishing, from the name of the lead, (which may be procured at the tackle-shops,) and is the most destructive way of killing Smelts. You always find Smelts in deep water, therefore a long line is necessary. The best place to catch these Fish, near London, is in the canal that runs from Limehouse-hole to Blackwall, through the Isle of Dogs: they are also, sometimes, taken off the logs lying in the Thames, and in all the wet docks below London-bridge. You may fish for Smelts from July to November and December—very early and late are the most successful times: many will take twenty or thirty dozen in a day.—Note, when you angle with a dip instead of a float, put a small piece of white feather at the top of your rod, you will then see, if you do not feel, a bite.

* Smelts will bite, although the hook shows through the bait; which is fortunate for the Angler, because every time he strikes the points of the hooks are forced through the bait, in consequence of his being obliged to strike with much force and quickness, or he loses a bite.

From its peculiar smell, which greatly resembles that of a cucumber, this delicate Fish takes its name in this country, but in Germany it is known by the name of the *Stink-fisch*. They spawn the latter end of March, and immediately afterwards go down the river towards the sea. They are generally about seven inches long, but will grow to the weight of nearly half a pound. In salt water, I have caught Smelts, by angling in Portsmouth harbour, and in various salt water docks, by the same method as used in the Thames.

Dead Lines.

A great many Eels, Flounders, &c., are taken with dead lines, between Blackwall and Old Ford, in the several creeks round Bromley, West-Ham, Abbey-Mills, and Stratford, where the tide flows from the river Thames. The dead line is made of whipcord, generally about six yards in length, to which are affixed five or six hooks, which should be tied on pieces of bristle, twisted hair, or gut, not more than four inches long, with a loop at the end. The hook generally chosen for this purpose is a No. 8; but in fishing for Flounders in brackish waters, where they generally run large, you may use a hook of the size of No. 6 or 7. Loop the hooks on the line (beginning at the bottom) about a foot and a half apart; close to every hook put a large shot, or piece of lead, to keep the bait on the ground, as every hook must lie at the bottom, for which purpose you should throw sufficient length of

line into the water. Flounders and Eels seldom take a bait, unless it lies on the ground; the best bait is a red worm, or a live Shrimp. Fishing in this way, you may use half a dozen lines at a time, by casting them in a few yards from each other, and tying the line to a weed, or a small stick stuck in the ground, or bank. It is necessary to have a short rod with you, three or four yards long, to the top of which is fixed a small iron crutch, or fork, in shape like the letter Y ; with this rod you take up the lines in the following manner: take the line in your left hand, and with the right pass the crutch or fork, under the line, pushing it forward in the water some distance, by which means you can easily lift out your line over weeds, or any other impediment. Without this rod, or crutch, you would be compelled to drag the lines up the side or bank, where the hooks would catch the weeds, &c., and spoil the baits, and occasion you infinite trouble. A great number of Flounders, Eels, Perch, Roach, Dace, and Gudgeons, are caught by this method of fishing, in those creeks I have named, especially from an hour after high-water, until the time the tide is quite run out: you may begin to use dead lines in the latter end of January, and meet with success until December, day and night.

If you fish for Eels among the shipping in the river Thames, act in the following manner: get some stoutish lay-cord, say about twenty yards, and fasten on it from three to six hooks, about half a yard apart from each other, and about the same distance above the top hook;

fasten a very large leger lead, or a piece of flat lead, which should weigh nearly a pound, to keep the hooks and line from drifting; use hooks of the size No. 6, tied to twisted gut, silk, or fine gimp, and bait with pieces of lean corned boiled beef, about the size of a broad bean. If you hold the line in your hand, you will feel a bite: snatch the line sharp, and with force, and you will hook the Eel.—Note, this mode of fishing should be practised from the ebbing of the tide until it is quite low water.

The Grayling, or Umber.

THE Grayling, or Umber, is not to be met with in the rivers about London, but abounds in the river Teme, about nine miles from Ludlow; and in the Severn, the Wye, and the Trent; the nearest river I have found them in to London, is the Avon, at Salisbury: they delight in rapid streams; and, so swift are their movements, that the Roman poet, Decius Ausonius, says of them.

"The Umbra swift, escapes the quickest eye."

This Fish spawns the latter end of May, and seldom exceeds a pound in weight; the head, gills, and back are brown, dappled with black: the belly is large, handsome, and of a white colour; the body long and round, over which runs several lines from the head to the tail, the middle line is spotted with black; the back fin is very large, and regularly spotted or waved with dark brown, and stands erect, like that of a Perch. They have teeth in the jaws and gullet: they feed on worms, flies, and small insects, and are angled for the same as for Trout in respect to flies, particularly the camlet and palmer fly; but if a worm or gentle is used, which they are very fond of, in the Spring and early part of a Summer's morning, if the water is somewhat coloured, then angle within a foot from the bottom, and use a No. 9 hook to your line, but no float. Grayling, or Umber, are fearless in taking a bait, and will often bite while a loose hook hangs in their mouths, which the Angler may have lost a minute before; but when you have fairly hooked him, like the Chub, he is soon subdued: strike immediately you see or feel a bite. This Fish is generally called a Grayling, until full grown, then it is entitled to the name of Umber. In the river Severn, with these Grayling you often take a small beautiful Fish called a Spring, of the Salmon species: in the North, this Fish is called Salmon Peel; in the West, Gravellings; and in the South, we call them Skeggers.

Grayling emit a most grateful fragrant smell from their body, much like that which arises from the wild thyme growing on the Downs, in Sussex.

The Salmon.

THE Salmon is a fish which is seldom taken by the Angler in South Britain. In Ireland and Wales, as well as in North Britain, the art of angling for Salmon is much practised, and well understood; but the Angler of the South, who can cast, or throw, dub, dress, or busk a fly, need not fear having sport in either of those countries, by paying a little attention to the methods there pursued in fishing; indeed, the artificial flies used, are neither numerous nor difficult to make: the fly most depended on is a large yellow-bodied fly, made on a No. 2 hook, with brownish red double wings; and also the green drake, the stone fly, and the owlet moth, all made double the size as when used for Trout, will kill Salmon in any river, from the Severn, in the West, to the Tweed, in the North.—Salmon are found in the river Thames, and

I believe, are justly considered to be superior in flavour to any bred in other rivers. Salmon are angled for at the top generally, with artificial flies of a very large size, of brown and glaring colours, made of peacock's feathers, &c., nearly as big as a large butterfly, *(See Angling Apparatus, Plate* 4.*)* They are also, fished for at bottom, both in the Thames and Medway, with a strong leger-line, and a No. 1 hook tied on gimp, which is whipped over with silk, waxed with shoemaker's wax: the bait is a raw muscle, prawn, or cockle, taken clear from the shell. They will sometimes take a small Fish, such as is used when trolling with a live-bait for Pike, and also large well-scoured lob-worms, of which put two on at a time. Salmon leave the sea for the rivers Thames and Lea, about September, (they are then termed Shedder Salmon,) and deposit their spawn about Christmas; about the end of April, their spawn becomes Fish of a fine shape, and beautifully spotted, which immediately make their way to the Sea. During the first year, they are called Salmon Smelts, then Morts, Half Fish, &c. In Scotland, small Salmon are called Grilts. The Pink Trout is thought in the North, to be bred from a female Salmon's spawn being impregnated by a Trout.

The Salmon is unknown in the Mediterranean sea, and other warm climates, but is found in northern waters; it lives in fresh water as well as salt, going up rivers, in Autumn, hundreds of miles to deposit their spawn; intent only on this object, they spring up cataracts, and over objects of great height. When

they are unexpectedly obstructed in their journey, they swim back a few paces, then, collecting all their force, with an astonishing spring, over-leap every obstacle.

> His tail takes in his mouth, and bending like a bow
> That's to full compass drawn, aloft himself does throw.

After they have spawned, they return to the sea very lean, but soon recover, and become more than twice or thrice their weight in a few months.

Among the regulations to protect this Fish, the party who catch and send Salmon to London for Sale, the produce of any fishery of less than six pounds weight, forfeits five pounds; the said penalty also attaches to the seller and buyer of the Fish.

CHAP. XVIII.

Angling for Salt-water Fish.

For the information of the lovers of angling, who may reside on the sea coast, or those whose business, pleasure, ill health, or any other cause, may occasion a visit, voyage, or residence on the shores of the sea, I have subjoined (to the "Art of Angling for Fresh-water Fish,") the different ways practised in catching Fish in the sea, with hook and line. The tackle, baits, &c., are concisely and practically described.

General Remarks on Lines, Hooks, Baits, &c.

The lines used for fishing in the sea, when a rod and float is not attached to them, are made of hempen cord, and sold at the fishing-tackle shops, under the name of Cod and Mackarel lines; but when fishing from a pier, either Ramsgate, Dover, or any other, or from a head-land, &c., during tolerable calm weather, I always use a strong platted silk line, of a dark colour, and upwards of seventy yards long, wound on the largest size multiplying winch, which I fasten on a very stout bamboo trolling rod, twenty feet long; on this line I place one of the largest size cork floats, to sink which, to its proper depth, that is, three parts under water, I put on as many large split shot as is necessary for the purpose, in preference to a leger lead, and fish with a hook No. 1 or 2, tied on fine and strong platted silk, or treble gut, but think the silk much the best. The baits, generally used are lug or sand worms, which worms are got by digging with a three pronged fork in the sand, when the tide is out; the places to find them are easily discovered, by observing where the sand is raised in small hillocks; the other baits are well scoured lob-worms, small pieces of fresh Fish, Lampreys, Eels, Muscles, Shrimps, &c.,* the bait always touching or drifting on the

* I have sometimes seen pieces of the Sword-fish cut into the shape and size of a Minnow, and hooked by the part representing the lip as a bait, which the Codlings have taken very freely.

bottom. Leger-fishing also answers very well in sea-harbours, and from the rocks.—Note, when you bait with a lug-worm, pass it well up, and over the shank of the hook, so that little of it remains hanging below the point of the hook, or the Fish will get it off, without being hooked.

Whiting.

Whitings are very numerous around the southern shore of England; they are angled for, generally, in a boat, a few miles from the shore, but they may be caught from piers, &c. When they are fished for in boats, it is usual to hire a boat and a man for the purpose; the Boat-man finds tackle and baits, which are lug-worms, a large hairy worm, dug from the sea sands: to the baits I have nothing to object; but their hooks in general, are miserably bad. After my first essay, in this mode of angling, I always provided my own hooks, which are the No. 1 and 2, tied to about nine inches of treble gut, or platted silk, with a loop at the end, and I always found my account in it, generally killing three Fish or more to other Angler's two when we have gone in a party, for the purpose of fishing for Whiting, I, using my own tackle, the other party the rusty Cod or Mackarel hooks of the Boatmen. The line used in fishing for Whiting from a boat, is a small strong cord or Mackarel line, to the bottom of which is fastened a piece of lead, called a dip, prepared for the purpose, to be bought at the tackle-shops; two or more hooks are used, fastened

by looping to pieces of whalebone, which are suspended from the dip lead, so that the hooks and baits do not hang or twist together, the dip lead hanging between the hooks: having anchored the boat, and baited your hooks, put them overboard close to the side of the boat; let them sink till you feel the dip lead touch the bottom: hold the line between the thumb and fore finger, lay the back of your hand or wrist on the side of the boat, your thumb and fingers inclining to the water, keep raising the line and hooks gently, a few inches from the bottom, letting it fall occasionally on the ground, which is easily discovered by the dip lead touching the ground; but do not let it remain there, for Whiting bite more a few inches above; I only recommend the dip to touch the bottom occasionally, that you may judge the distance: when the Fish bite, you will feel a sudden snatch or jerk; immediately strike, and draw up your line; sometimes you may lose the Fish for want of sharp hooks. It ought to be noticed, that those who are not accustomed to fish from a boat, frequently think they have a bite when it is only the motion or rolling of the boat: but a little practice will soon enable the Angler to distinguish the difference. When thus fishing for Whitings, you frequently catch Plaice, Dabs, Flounders, &c., as well as Whitings, sometimes a Whiting on one hook and a Dab on another, at the same time; I have caught many a bucket full of those Fish near Margate, at Hastings, at Weymouth, &c., from a boat. The

places I have been in the habit of angling for Whiting with rod and line are in the harbour, and from the piers at Ramsgate and Dover, for which purpose fit your tackle as follows: provide a strong trolling rod, about twenty feet long, with a stout ring on each joint,—the top joint should have two; fasten a multiplying winch, of the largest size, (which ought to contain seventy or eighty yards of the strongest platted silk line,) to the butt of the rod; draw as much of the line from the winch, through the rings on the rod, as is necessary; put on the line one of the largest size cork floats, and within a foot of the hook as many large shot as will sink the float three parts under water. Then fasten the hook, or rather the length of treble gut or platted silk to which the hook, a No. 1, is tied on the line, either with a loop or by a draw knot; plumb the depth, for which purpose a larger plummet is necessary than what is used in river or pond fishing, let your bait lightly drag the bottom: the best baits are fresh lug-worms, pieces of Smelts, or any fresh white Fish, or well scoured lob-worms; many sea Fish will also take a large bunch of gentles put on the hook, or a piece of greaves. Those persons, who seldom angle for any but salt-water Fish, are not so attentive to clean good baits, or covering the point of the hook, &c. as the fresh water Anglers are, but those who pay a little more attention to the mode of baiting the hooks, &c., will be amply repaid by increase of sport.—Note, the best time for salt-water fishing is

in warm weather, and always during the time the tide is flowing, or, as some term it, rising. Whiting are universally considered as light nutritious food; they seldom exceed a pound and a half in weight; in shape, this Fish is long and slender in the body, but large and bony about the head, the colour silvery, and the skin almost transparent. Whiting Pollack, are, I believe, of the same species, though larger; the Whiting Pout is smaller; they are all angled for in the same way. Whiting, Mackarel, Plaice and Eels may be taken by angling at the end of the chain Pier at Brighton.

Cod.

This Fish is caught on the coast all round Great Britain, and on the coast of Buchan, in Scotland; on the Frith of Forth, the Clyde, and on both sides of the Frith of Murray. The chief place where Cod are caught for the London-market, that is to say, fresh Cod, is on the north-east part of Ireland during the Summer, or rather from Spring till Michaelmas, and also on the north-east coast of England, from Spring till Midsummer. I have caught small Cod with the same tackle, rod, float, &c., as described in angling from Piers, &c., for Whiting, particularly from between the rocks and small headlands near Water-Bay and West-gate Bay, near Birchington; that is, on the Kentish coast, between the Reculvers and Margate. I have been most successful when my hook was baited with a piece of Whiting, about the size of a large nut; they will also take bullock's liver, lug-worms

lob-worms, pieces of Lobsters, Shrimps, &c. Always fish at bottom, and when the tide is making in, and in still holes, between rocks, where the bottom is sandy and clear from weeds; the Cod so caught are small, seldom weighing two pounds, and are called on the coast, Codlings. It is well known the great supply of salt Cod comes from the banks of Newfoundland, some weighing more than thirty pounds. At Ramsgate a boatman may be hired, who will take you at a proper time of tide, &c., into the bay, where you may sometimes take a score or two of Codlings in a few hours.

Plaice and Flounders.

The best of this species of Fish is called Downs Plaice, being chiefly caught in the Downs, or on the flats which are in the sea, between Folkestone and Hastings, weighing from one to between five and six pounds weight; of course, you must angle from a boat. On the coast of Holland they are caught considerably larger; I have heard of some that weighed eighteen pounds; the large Plaice are called Dutch Plaice. The Plaice bite very freely at a lug-worm, lob-worm, a piece of fresh Salmon, half an Oyster, a raw Muscle, or Shrimps: this Fish has but a small mouth, therefore a hook, No. 3 or 4, is quite large enough, whether you use a line held by the hand, or fish with a rod to the line: if the weather is calm, you may angle with the same rod, line, and tackle as described for Whiting, but note, smaller hooks are required: as there is much difference between the size of the

mouth of a Whiting and Plaice, and also in the strength thereof, by giving the Plaice plenty of line, you may kill very heavy Fish with a No. 4 hook, and receive much amusement; those Fish will feed at half or mid-water, as well as at bottom. Plaice are considered a very wholesome, light food, and when dressed and eat, fresh caught on the sea-coast, are a choice Fish. Large Flounders may be taken in Ramsgate harbour, with the same tackle, and lob-worms for bait.

Turbot.

The London market is chiefly supplied with Turbot by the Dutch fishermen, or with those caught on the Dutch Coast or Dogger Bank, though a great many are caught on the Coasts of Cornwall and Devon, about Torbay, &c. The most killing bait for Turbot are Lampreys, cut into pieces; they are also caught with pieces of Whiting, Herrings, Smelts, bullock's liver, &c. The mouth of the Turbot is small, therefore use the same size hook as for Plaice, with a strong line, for Turbot are sometimes hooked of a large size, weighing near twenty pounds, but they are generally from six to ten pounds. The larger come from the Dutch coast. The Turbot is found on flats and shallows or sandy shelves, &c., similar to the Plaice, Dabs, and other Flat Fish. When angling for Turbot, it is always from a boat. The flesh of Turbot is very white and firm, and doubtless, wholesome, if not taken to excess; many prefer the Turbot to any other Fish the ocean or fresh waters produce.

Grey Mullet.

So called, from its silvery, white, blue, and green colours. Mullets visit the south and west coasts of England in the beginning of Summer, and enter the creeks and rivers, particularly about Arundel and Chichester, in Sussex,* and Barnstaple, in Devonshire, and leave them generally the latter end of August. At those places, Mullet are seldom caught, by angling, of more than two pounds, though they are occasionally taken with nets, weighing six pounds. When angling for Mullet, your tackle must be strong, for they struggle very hard when they feel the hook. Your line and rod, also, must be long, unless you have a winch and running tackle fixed to your rod; in the deep holes and pools you will succeed best, by letting your baited hook hang about three feet under water. Use a hook of the size No. 6 or 7, and a cork float: the best bait for Mullet is the sand, or sea worm, which should be drawn as much up the shank of your hook as you can, that little of its tail may hang loose, for Mullet are a sucking Fish, and apt to get the tail end of the worm off, without taking the hook within their mouth.

This Fish is considered fine and delicious, being esteemed both by the ancients and moderns: in shape,

* About two miles from Arundel there is a house of entertainment for Sportsmen, called the Rabbits, near which the Angler will meet with good sport in fishing for Roach, Bream, Jack, Pike, &c., in the river Arun.

Mackerel.

they are long and thick; head square and flat; nose blunt; sides marked with dusky lines; the body is covered with larger scales than any other sea Fish I know of; the back is of a dusky blue and green; the scales are of a silvery white; the whole appearance is, I think, much like an overgrown Dace. Mullet are very lively and sportive in fine weather, and show themselves in shoals, and are then frequently caught with a fly, they spawn in the sea, and contrary to the Salmon, come into the fresh water to recover and strengthen themselves.

Mackarel.

This well-known Fish first appears in the Channel about April continuing to advance to the Downs, as far as the Godwin Sands; they are caught in immense numbers on the Cornwall, Devon, Sussex, and Kentish coasts, during May and June, in nets, by fishermen; they are equally plentiful on the opposite French coast: I have caught many with the angle on the northern coast, particularly at Yarmouth and Scarborough, towards the latter end of the Summer.

Mackarel may be caught with a small line, called a Mackarel line, held in the hand, baited with a piece of any kind of fresh Fish; they are a bold-biting Fish, and, when you begin to angle for them, and are not provided with baits, use a small piece of red cloth: if they are on the feed, you will soon kill a Fish; you should then cut it up for baits. When you fish from the stern of a ship, while she lays at anchor, let out

from ten to twenty yards of line, which will swim away with the current, and your bait will keep in the rippling of the stream, some little below the surface, which is the proper place, for Mackarel feed near the surface: when the water and weather is bright, is the best time; when you feel a bite, strike smartly, and draw the Fish in. You may angle for Mackarel with rod and line, the same as described for Whiting, either from a ship at anchor, or from a boat, when the weather is calm. Two hooks may be used with advantage, if placed twelve or fourteen inches apart; perchance I have hooked a Herring when fishing off Scarborough, and further north; but no person goes expressly to angle for Herrings, therefore I concieve it does not come within my plan to say any more of this Fish.

Halibut.

Halibut are caught in the British channel, as well as in the German ocean. The usual baits are pieces of fresh Fish, Mullets, Oysters, Wilks, and Eels. The Halibut is the largest of flat-fish; they are frequently taken near a yard in length, weighing from eighty to a hundred pounds, consequently very strong hooks and lines are necessary; when a bite is felt, it is usual to give line, and a few minutes to pouch, before you strike. By many persons, Halibut is considered as fine as Turbot.

Skate.

Skate abound on the sea-coast all round England they may be caught near the shore with a long strong cod line and hook, baited with a piece of any kind of fresh Fish, Muscles, Oysters, Wilks, &c. When a bite, you will feel them tug; let them pull several times, give line and a few minutes' time to pouch; angle at bottom and during a breeze of wind. Skate, when not too large and are crimped, are thought good eating by some; but when they are very large, many object to them as having a rank taste. Skate are caught sometimes that weigh upwards of two hundred pounds. The Fishermen on the sea-coast use the flesh of Skate, to bait for Lobsters, &c.

Sand Eel, or Launce.

This Fish is found buried about six or eight inches in sand on the sea-beach, and is taken by turning up the sand with a three-pronged fork, such as is used for digging out lug-worms. The best time to search for them is immediately after the tide leaves the sands: the flesh of this Fish is of a delicate flavour, and worth the trouble of digging for.

Smelts,

Smelts are caught in many harbours and wet docks on the sea-coast, with the angle: I have caught very fine ones in Portsmouth harbour.

Eel Pout, or Burbot.

This Fish partakes much of the Eel, being without scales, burying itself among loose sands, weeds, &c. They are numerous as far as the tide flows up the Severn, Trent, and the Mersey rivers, where they are caught with a hook tied to gimp, and baited with worms, Minnows, small Gudgeons, &c.; they are considered sweet nutritious food; in length the sizes vary from twelve to upwards of twenty inches.

Surmullet.

The Surmullet is a scarce Fish in this country: I have caught some when fishing from the wharfs and quays at Plymouth harbour with an angle rod and line, same as described in fishing for Whiting, &c. only using a smaller hook, a No. 8, tied to twisted gut, baited with lob-worms, pieces of fresh Salmon, Shrimps, or shell-fish; they are a singularly marked Fish, having the appearance of a painted artificial Fish; some are of a dark blue and white, others of a faded yellow hue; some are mottled about the back, fins, &c. with a bright scarlet and yellow, almost as gaudy as the plumage of a paroquet; in shape, broad and thick towards the head.

Groupers and Snappers.

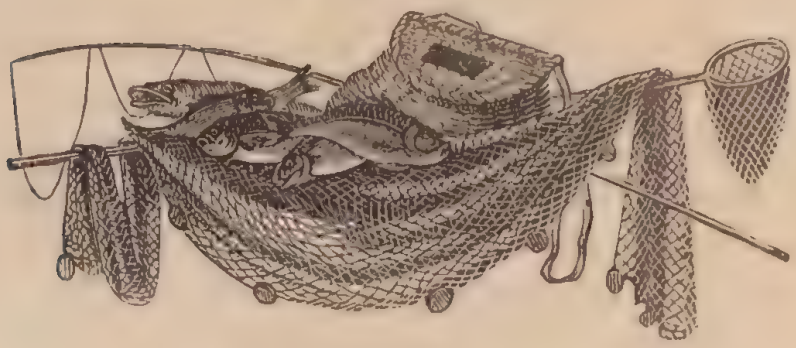
These Fish are well known at the Havannah and Jamaica, where they are angled for with line and hook. In Jamaica, parties go in boats from Kingston and

Port Royal to the Pallisades, where many Groupers and Snappers are caught, and frequently Mullet. The tackle is similar to what is used in Europe in fishing for Whiting, which is held over the boat's side and suffered to descend to the bottom, from which you raise it a few inches again, letting it touch the bottom, so continuing till you feel a bite. The baits generally used here are Shrimps, pieces of Fish, and small shell-fish.

Bass

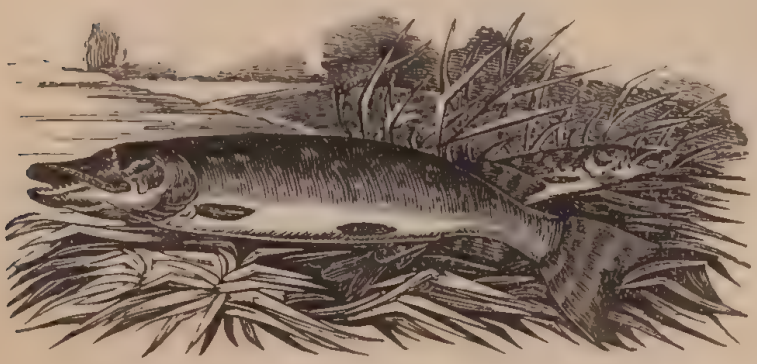
This Fish is generally considered a sea-fish, though they will live in rivers and fresh waters: they are much like Salmon in shape, and Dace in colour, especially the smaller or young Bass, at which time they have some few black spots on their backs, and large white scales on the sides, silvery belly, and a blueish back. The Bass are taken, from five to fifteen pounds weight, and are thought by some persons a well flavoured Fish; but I think them indifferently tasted, and certainly much inferior to Salmon: they are caught in the Severn, and around the coast near Bristol, &c. chiefly with nets, but are sometimes killed by the Angler when he is fishing for Mullet, as they frequent such places as are agreeable to the Mullet, and will take the same baits. *(See Mullet.)* Great numers of small Bass are taken in the river Taw near Barnstaple in Devonshire: those small Bass feed freely during the months of April and May: they vary in size from one to ten or twelve ounces each.

Note.—When angling in the sea, as well as in fresh waters, early in the morning and late in the evening, during the long days, and hot weather, are by far the most likely times to have good sport. And further observe, that when the sea-water is very bright, from neap-tides and long calms, you must not expect much sport, when angling from the rocks or close in shore, for the Fish are then shy, and retire farther seaward but when the weather and water are somewhat settled, after a storm. Codlings, &c., will be found strong on the feed. Shrimps and Prawns are also then found in great numbers among certain weeds near the shore, and are then easily taken with the shrimping-net.



PART II.

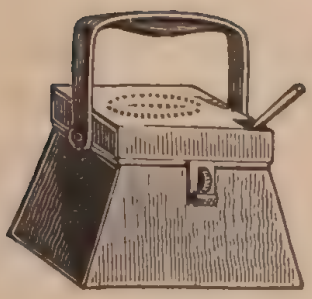
THE TROLLER'S GUIDE.



"The Pike's my joy, of all the scaly shoal:
And of all fishing instruments, the Troll."

The Angler, a Poem.

CHAP. I.



1.

2.

3.

No. 1, Live-Bait Kettle. No. 2, Book or Case for Trolling Tackle. No. 3, Telescope-handle Landing Hook.

Prefatory Remarks on Trolling for Jack or Pike.

HE art of Jack Fishing or taking Jack or Pike with a hook, line, and rod, is properly termed TROLLING; but this branch of angling is generally divided and described, by Anglers, under the three following heads, viz. TROLLING, LIVE-BAIT-FISHING, and SNAP-FISHING. Trolling, in the limited sense of the word, means taking Jack and Pike with the gorge hook; Live-bait fishing, when a floated line is used; and Snap-fishing, when the Angler so places his baited hooks, that, immediately he feels a bite, he strikes with much force, and generally throws over his head, or drags the Jack or Pike on shore, instead of playing his victim till he is exhausted. I shall

fully explain these different modes of angling in Chap. X., with observations on the advantages and merits of each.

Trolling I consider a valuable branch of fishing, affording the Angler several months' amusement during the year, and it may be practised without danger to the health, when every other mode of angling ceases to be either profitable or prudent to follow; for as the Winter approaches, Fish seldom rise to the surface of the water, but leave the sharps, shallows, and scouers, for the more deep and still parts of rivers or other waters; the fly-fisherman may then lay by his tackle till the ensuing Spring is well advanced. Barbel, Carp, Tench, Perch, Eels, Gudgeon, and Dace also refuse the choicest bait the wily Angler can offer them when the Winter commences; and, though Chub and Roach will certainly take a bait very freely at bottom, during the whole Winter, yet the Angler, who is subject to the cramp, or rheumatic affections, or is advancing in years, should not hazard his health by sitting or standing in one place by the river side for several hours together in the Winter months, which he certainly must do if he expect to kill a good dish of Roach; but when properly clothed, especially about the feet and legs, and will take the trouble of dressing his boots or shoes with the following composition, he will seldom get wet, or even feel dampness, after being exposed for many hours in the rain or swampy places. Take half a pound of mutton suet, five ounces of bees' wax, cut into small pieces, to which

add an ounce of black resin powdered; simmer the whole in a pipkin over a moderate fire, till all is melted and well mixed. When you wish to use it, render it liquid by melting, and rub it well into the leather with a brush. Note.—This mixture appears yellow on the boots or shoes, and if that is objected to, put among it half an ounce of powder blacking, He may then indulge himself with a few hours' trolling whenever the water is fit for the purpose, because trolling is strong exercise, from moving continually from one part of a river or water to another; and if the Fish are well on the feed, and he kills two or three brace of heavy Pike, the Angler will find that the exertions he has made in casting the bait, playing, killing, and landing those Fish, and the carrying them home, nearly approach to labour; and as labour is generally considered conducive to health, the Troller has but little to fear on that score, but may allow himself the pleasure of killing a few brace of Jack or Pike for his own table, or for the more pleasing gratification of occasionally supplying that of a friend.

Having thus cursorily discoursed on the nature of Trolling, or Jack Fishing, &c., I shall now proceed to instruct the reader how to choose hooks, lines, rods, and other tackle fit for the various methods practised by Anglers who excel in the art of Trolling or Jack-fishing, with full and clear directions how to bait the hooks, accompanied with cuts or engravings to illustrate the same.

CHAP. II.

The Gorge Hook, and how to bait it.

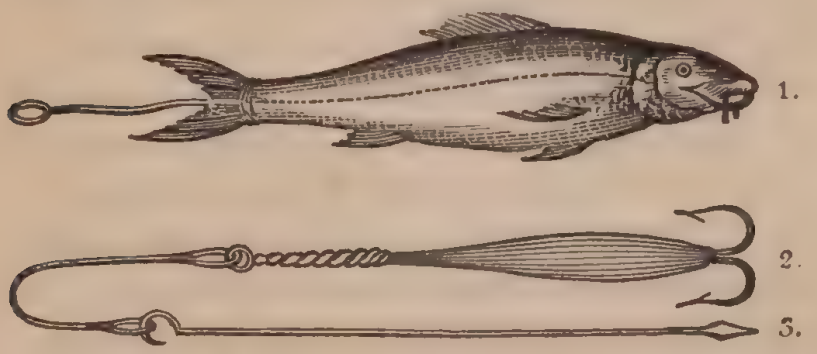
THE gorge hook consists of two, or what is called a double Eel hook: to the shank of the hook is fastened about two or three inches of brass wire twisted, the end of which forms a loop; to this loop about nine inches of gimp is tied, the other end of the gimp being turned and tied into a loop, to be ready to loop on the traces or trolling line, either to a swivel or by a slip or loop knot; but those Anglers who will take the trouble to add a box-swivel to the gorge hook in the following manner, will find it assist much in spinning the bait, and enticing the Jack or Pike, to take it: First, take a piece of gimp, about three inches long, and fasten it to the wire of the hook; and to the other end fix a box swivel; then take another piece of gimp, about six inches in length, and fasten one end of it to the aforesaid swivel; and make a loop at the other to fix on the traces or trolling line.

To make this hook sink, or of a sufficient weight to be cast to any distance, the shank of the hook and part of the brass wire is neatly covered with lead, some of a long octagon shape, others of a round or barrel form, (I prefer the latter,) and I also generally remove about a third of the lead from the brass of those hooks which I find kept ready for sale at the fishing-tackle shops; because I have found, when the lead lays nearly the whole length of the bait-fish, and

especially if a Bleak or thin Roach, that when the Jack strikes it, his teeth pierces through the flesh and touches the lead; he then immediately drops the bait. Now by removing a part of the lead as above directed, the remainder the Angler will find to be sufficient for sinking, &c. his bait, and it will lay at the bottom of the throat, or only a little lower; and as Jack generally seize their prey by or across the middle, in such case his teeth seldom come in contact with the lead, and he then, without fear, retires to his haunt, and soon pouches the whole.

Having described the nature of a gorge hook, I will now instruct the reader how to bait the same.

Notice the cuts beneath:—



No. 1. Gorge Hook baited. 2. Gorge hook. 3. Baiting Needle.

To bait the gorge hook, take a baiting needle, and hook the curved end of it to the loop of the gimp, (to which the hook is tied;) then introduce the point of the needle into a dead bait's mouth, and bring it out at the middle of the fork of its tail drawing the gimp through the bait, the lead will then lie hid inside the bait's belly, and the shank of the hooks will be inside its mouth, the

barbs and points outside and turning upwards; some Anglers turn the points downwards. Now to keep the bait steady on the hooks, tie the tail-part of it, just above the fork, to the gimp with white thread, silk, or cotton; but if a needle and thread is passed through the flesh of each side of the bait, about half an inch above the tail, so as to encircle the gimp and then tied, it is a neater and better way than tying around the outside.

The baited hook is now complete to fix to the trolling line, to go in search of Jack or Pike; however, it is necessary that the reader should know that Anglers use Fish for baits when trolling with the gorge hook, varying in size from one to four ounces in weight; for which reason, it is proper to have an assortment of the different sizes of gorge hooks, that you may always have a hook proportionate to the size of the bait-fish your judgment leads you to select; for you must notice, that the barbs and points of the hook should not project from the sides of the bait's mouth, but should lay very close, because, if the points &c. project, they are very likely to be felt by Jack or Pike when they are in the act of changing the position of the bait-fish in order to pouch it: if they do, they will then immediately blow it out of their mouth; and also when casting, dipping, drawing, and spinning the bait, those projecting parts of the hook frequently catch hold of weeds, &c. by which misfortune the hook is drawn from its position, and the bait-fish either much mutilated or entirely spoiled.

There is some difference of opinion among Anglers

in respect to sewing up the mouth of the bait-fish; but after the hook has been placed in a proper manner, and the tail-part tied or sewed to the gimp, I think there is little occasion for stitching up the mouth, and therefore never do it; but I have certainly seen many Jack and Pike killed with the mouth of the bait stitched or sewed up. In regard to cutting off the fins of the bait-fish, I am decidedly of opinion, it is to the Angler's advantage to cut them all close away, because the bait will then spin or twirl more freely in the water when sinking or being drawn up, than when the fins are left on; and further, the bait-fish will last longer, for when the fins are left on, they frequently catch or hang among weeds; and when this occurs the bait-fish is generally torn, or deprived of part of its scales, and of course soon ceases to be an enticing bait. This is of great consequence to the Troller who may be short of baits, and also far from a place where he can replenish his bait box: for if the bait-fish remain in tolerable preservation, and Jack or Pike are strong on the feed, with care and skill the Angler may frequently kill a brace or more with one bait-fish.

CHAP. III.

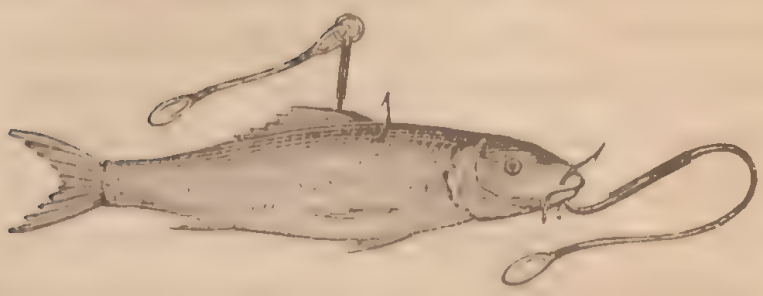


Fig. 1.

Single Hooks for Live-Bait fishing: to bait them; with Directions for tying or whipping Hooks to Gimp.

When a single hook is used, it is baited in the two following ways: pass the point and barb of the hook through the two lips of the live-bait fish, on the side of the mouth, which does not distress the bait as it would do by passing them through the middle or nose part of the fish. The other way is, to pass the point and barb of the hook under the back fin of the bait-Fish, and bring it out on the other side. *(See the Cut above.)* Be careful, when you pass the hook under the back fin, that it does not go too deep, so as to touch or injure the back bone; for, if it does, the bait-fish cannot swim strong, and will soon die.—Note. When you use a single hook for Jack-fishing, in the way above described, prefer those of the number 4 or 5. It is necessary the Troller should know how to tie or whip on the hooks himself, in case of accident; therefore I shall direct him to do it in as plain and

concise a manner as possible :—To tie a hook to gimp, take some strong fine floss silk, well wax it, with shoemakers' wax then take the hook and hold it between the thumb and finger of the left-hand, and whip round the shank, from the bend to the top, with waxed silk; then lay the gimp on the inside part of the shank of the hook, and whip it close and tightly down, carrying your whipping till nearly opposite the point of the hook; then turn back the point of your silk, and hold it down with your thumb, the silk will then be in a loop, which you must pass or lap over three or four times the end you hold under your thumb; now take that end and draw it gradually until the lappings which were passed over lie close and firm, and then cut off the spare waxed silk: this is called the hidden or finishing knot, and will not draw. Some Anglers rub a little hog's lard or suet over the whipping, which makes it smooth, and also helps to preserve it; but a little good oil-varnish, or liquid tar, is superior. This is the best way I can describe to tie or whip on a hook, though, probably, not so intelligible as might be wished; but any experienced Angler, or the persons keeping fishing-tackle shops, can teach the novice in two or three minutes how to whip or tie on a hook, which he would do well to avail himself of the first opportunity.

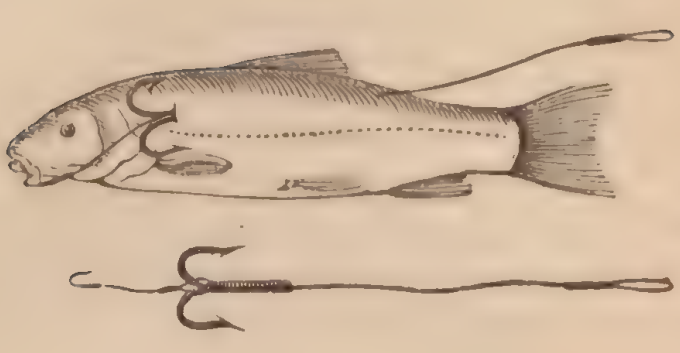


Fig. 2.

Double and Treble Hooks for Live-bait Fishing.

Provide two hooks, either brazed together or made on one shank, tied to about eight or nine inches of gimp, with a loop at the end of the gimp; or you may tie two single hooks back to back on a piece of gimp, instead of the double ones; then take a baiting needle, and hook the curve end into the loop of the gimp; now enter the point of the baiting needle just under the skin of the live-bait-fish, close to the gills, guiding it upwards, and bring it out close to the back, at the extremity of the back fin, and draw the gimp after till the bend of the hooks are brought to the place where the needle entered, and all is ready to fix to the trolling line. *(See the Cut.)* —Note. Use hooks of such a size that the points and barbs do not project over the belly or shoulder of the bait-fish, unless you intend them as a snap, *(see Live-bait-fishing, Chap. IX.)* that when a Jack or Pike seizes the bait he may not feel them. Hooks double as

above described, of various sizes, are kept ready for sale at the principal fishing tackle-shops.

The reader will notice, that the gimp and shank of the hooks are to lay under the skin of the bait-fish, and therefore be careful to carry the baiting-needle cautiously, so as not to wound the bait's-flesh, and it will feel very little inconvenience from the operation, but will swim nearly as strong in the water with the hooks attached to it as without. Observe, by casting in and drawing out a bait so hooked several times, the skin of the bait-fish is apt to strip downwards, and in consequence the hooks lose their proper place; to prevent which, I use a No. 9 hook, tied to about an inch of gut, with a loop to the end of it: pass the loop over the gimp that is tied to the double hook, and bring it to the bends of them; now when the hook is baited, take hold of the small hook, and run the point and barb into the bait-fish's under lip; this prevents the skin from stripping down, as before alluded to, and the bait remains much more lively and tempting to a Jack or Pike.

This method of baiting hooks is a most killing way in live-bait-fishing, and to be preferred to every other. Again observe the Cut, to illustrate this description. —Note. When the double hook above described is used, the sizes No. 4 or 5 will be found most proper, when tied to gimp; but when tied to twisted gut, those of the size No. 6 should be preferred.

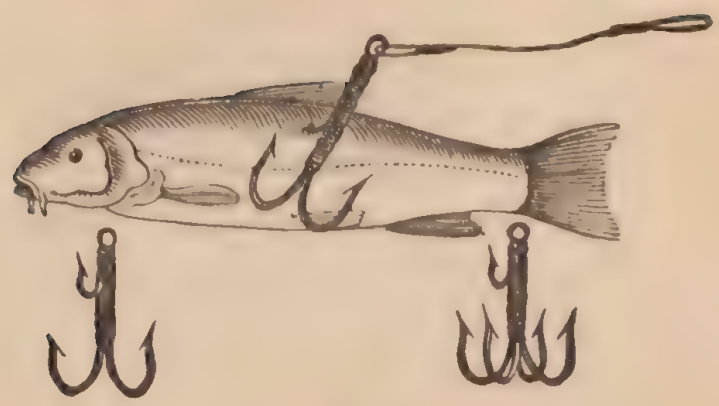
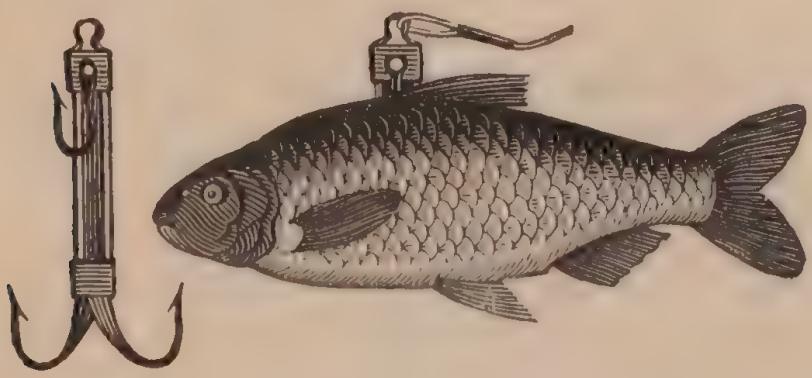


Fig. 3.

Treble Hook, Five Hooks, and Spring Snap.

To fit this treble hook, take two hooks that are made on one shank, and about half way up the shank tie a smaller size hook, a No. 7 or 8. *(See the hooks, in the Cut above.)* Now tie the whole to about nine inches of gimp, with a loop at the end, and all is ready to be baited; having a live-bait-fish, enter the small hook beneath its back fin, (avoid touching the back bone,) and bring the point and barb out on the other side; the two large hooks will then lie close to the side of the bait. *(See the Cut above.)* Some Anglers add two more hooks to the three above described, by tying two hooks made on one shank to the other on which the three hooks are tied, so as to allow the hooks to hang down the other side of the bait-fish; other Anglers tie four single hooks, No. 2 size, to four pieces of gimp, each piece about an inch long; then tie those four short pieces to about nine inches of very stout gimp, and in the middle of

those four large hooks they have one of the size No. 7, tied to a piece of gut, the top of which is tied among the four large ones. *(See the Cut.)* The small one is to hook through the bait's back fin, as already described, and the large hooks will hang loose, two on each side of it.



Spring Snap.

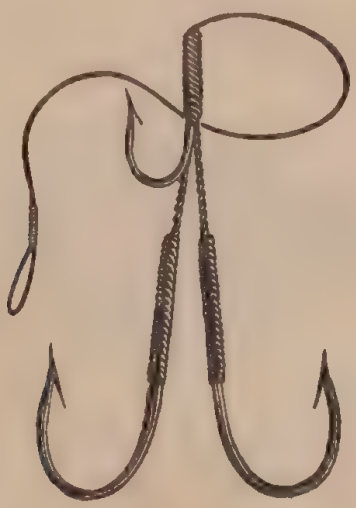
If the Angler chooses to use a spring snap with three hooks, *(as represented in the Cut above,)* in preference to the plain, or, as some term them, the dead snap, (terms synonymous, meaning a snap without a spring,) which I by no means recommend, he has only to follow the directions given on baiting the dead or plain snap.

Bead Hook.

The bead-hook is formed of two single hooks, tied back to back on nine inches of gimp, or you may purchase them made of one piece of wire; between the lower part of the shanks is fastened a small link or two of chains, having a piece of lead of a conical form, or like a drop-bead, (from which it takes its name) linked by a staple to it; *(see the Cut above.)* The lead is put into the live bait's mouth, (a Gudgeon is the best bait) which is slightly sewed up with white thread; the bait will still live and swim very strong for many hours: but I cannot recommend this hook, because I have frequently found, when I have had a run, the Fish has generally dropped the bait, instead of pouching it; and you must see, that unless the Jack pouches the bait, you have no chance of killing him: this often arises from the hooks hanging loose to each other, and thereby creating an alarm in the Jack or Pike. And again, those loose hooks frequently hang to weeds, &c.: on the whole, I think the bead-hook is not worthy a place among the Troller's tackle, therefore shall not again make mention of it; but in place thereof, will inform you of one much better.

An excellent Live-bait Snap.

Take two hooks of the size No. 3, and tie each of them to about an inch-and-a-quarter of twisted wire; then take a hook, of the size No. 8, and about ten inches of gimp; put one end of the gimp to the wire that the aforesaid hooks are tied to; lay the hook No. 8 on the wire and gimp, and tie the whole very securely together; then make a loop at the other end of the gimp, and the whole is ready to receive the bait. *(See the Cut.)*



To bait this snap, act as follows:—Take a proper-sized live Gudgeon, Roach, or Dace, and run the small hook through the flesh just under the back fin, and let the two large hooks hang one on each side of the bait-fish, and all is complete. When a Jack seizes your bait, and runs off, strike smartly, and you will seldom fail hooking him.—Note: When tying the hooks and

gimp together, place the large hooks so that the point of one of them shall stand towards the head of the bait-fish, and the other towards the tail.

CHAP. IV.

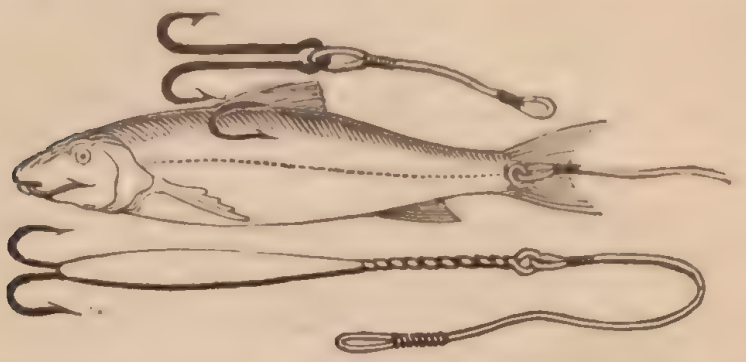
Snap-Fishing, and how to Bait the Hooks.

Dead-Snap, with Two or Four Hooks.

TAKE about twelve inches of stout gimp, make a loop at one end; at the other end tie a hook, size No. 2, and about an inch further up the gimp, tie another hook of the same size; procure a drop-bead lead, which the fishing-tackle shops keep fixed to a small ring or two. Now, to bait the hooks, proceed as follows: put the loop of the gimp under the gill of a dead-bait-fish, and bring it out at its mouth; draw the gimp till the hook at the bottom comes just behind

the back fin of the bait, and the point and barb pierces slightly through the skin of it; to keep the hook steady, then pass the ring of the drop-bead lead over the loop of the gimp, and fix the lead inside the bait-fish's mouth, and sew the mouth up, *(see the Cut,)* and all is ready to fasten to the trolling line. If you add two more hooks to the two already described, you will then have a very killing snap; to fit which, take a piece of stout gimp, about four inches long, and make a small loop at one end, and then tie two hooks of the same size and in the same manner as the first two; after the first two and the lead are in their places, and before the bait's mouth is sewed up, pass the loop of the short piece of gimp under the gill and out of the mouth of the bait, and draw till the hooks are in the same situation on that side as the other; now pass the loop of the long piece of gimp through the loop of the short one, and draw all straight; tie the two pieces of gimp together close to the bait's mouth, and sew that up; or you may tie the short piece of gimp to the long one instead of having a loop at the end. *(See the Cut of four hooks.)* If you do so, you must pass the hooks first through the bait-fish's mouth and out at the gills, instead of in at the gills and out of the mouth; then slightly fix them through the bait's skin just to keep them in their places; and when you feel a bite and strike, they clear themselves and hook firmly into the Jack or Pike; or, if you wish to increase the strength of your tackle, tie the second two hooks to a piece of gimp of the same length as

the first; this way does not look so neat certainly as the above described; but that is of little consequence, for snap-fishing, altogether, depends more on the strength of arm and tackle than on skill or science.



Dead Snap, with a Gorge Hook and Double Hook.

To bait this snap, first introduce the gorge into the bait's mouth, the leaded part laying in its belly exactly as when you intend trolling with a gorge hook, *(see Gorge Hook baited.)* Then take a double hook, No. 4 or 5, which must be tied to a piece of gimp about three inches long, with a small loop at the end; now take your baiting needle and enter the point of it in the bait's back just where the back fin is, (but note, it is the best way to cut off the said fin and every other fin,) and bring it out at the tail; having first put the loop of the gimp to which the hooks are tied through the curve or eye of the baiting needle, draw the loop out at the tail of the bait, the hooks will then lay close over the bait's back, one on each side. After you have placed the hooks properly, take the loop end of the gimp to which the gorge hook is tied, and pass it through the loop of the gimp to which the other

hooks are tied; draw all close to the bait's tail, and tie them very fast with waxed silk round the Fish, just above the tail, and all is then complete to fasten on to your line; in this case, if you wish or think proper to strengthen your tackle, tie those two hooks to gimp of the same length as that to which the gorge is tied, and fasten both loops together with the trolling line or trace.

The superiority of this method of using a snap consists in all the hooks laying close to the bait, and also in the gimp and line coming from the tail instead of from the mouth or back, which is very material, for hooks so placed will allow the bait to appear more like a live Fish swimming or spinning about in the water, than if it is hooked by the back fin or side; in which case, much of the hooks are exposed, the gimp sticks up, &c. (*See the Cut.*) Over the bait-fish are represented the two hooks, with the short piece of gut, and below the bait-fish the gorge hook, and in the middle the bait-fish, with the hooks properly placed in it. Note:—I always carry some double hooks tied to short pieces of gimp, when I troll with a gorge, because, when I find Jack will move and seize my bait but will not pouch it, I put on those back hooks, and convert my gorge to a snap, which is done with little trouble or loss of time; and, of course, when my bait is so altered, I strike immediately I feel a run; for the Angler will find, during his practice, that after many hours' trolling, and several runs, if he cannot get a Fish to pouch, a snap is then his only resource.

Dead-Snap, with one Hook.

To bait this snap, take a long-shanked No. 1 hook, and tie it to about twelve inches of strong gimp; then fix the baiting needle to the loop of the gimp; enter the point of the needle just below the end on the side of the back fin of the dead bait-fish, carrying it carefully just beneath the skin; bring it out about a quarter of an inch before you reach the gill, then enter the needle under the gill of the bait-fish, and bring it out of the mouth; draw the gimp after, until the bend point and barb of the hook lay on the bait as represented in the cut; now take a bead-drop lead, such as described in baiting a snap with four hooks, in page 190; pass it over the loop of the gimp to which the hook is tied, and place it inside the mouth of the bait-fish, and sew the mouth up, and all is ready to fix to the trolling line. Note.—The lead is placed in the mouth of the bait, to add to its weight, which enables the Angler to cast his bait with more certainty to any particular spot, the gimp to which the hook is tied being directed to lay only just under the skin of the bait-fish; so that when the Angler feels a bite and strikes, the gimp

then rips away, and enables the hook to fix firmly into either the Jack or Pike; but if it be carelessly placed too deep when you strike, the hook gets fixed, or nearly buried in the body of the bait, instead of the Jack, &c. Therefore, recollect, in baiting for the snap, where the hooks lay outside the bait-fish, that they are so placed as to easily clear themselves, and thereby get firm hold of the prey; but if the Angler would take the trouble of introducing another hook of the same size, exactly in the same manner, under the skin of the bait-fish on the other side, he would then have a very neat and effective snap, and also one very easily baited. Note:—You may have the second hook tied to a short piece of gimp just to reach the bait's mouth, and fasten it to the first piece; or, if both pieces of gimp are long, it is of no consequence, because fine tackle is not requisite when snap-fishing.

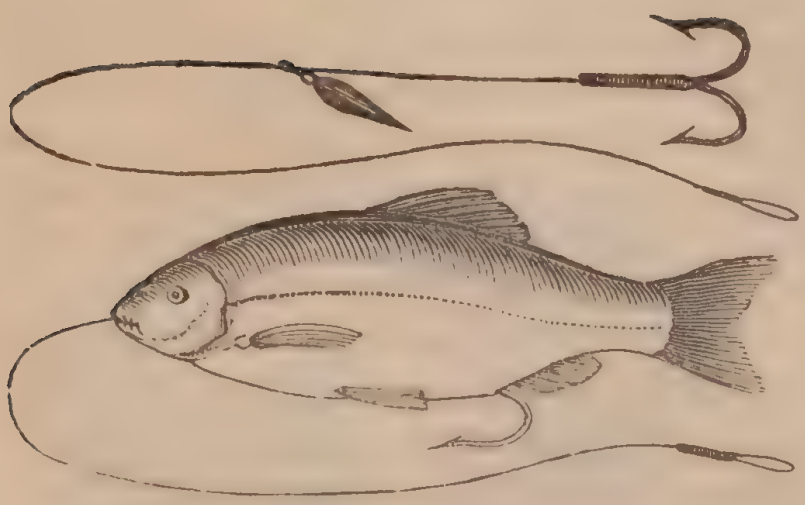
Barb or Spear Hook.

THE shank of this hook is loaded with lead; one end of it is like a dart or harpoon, the other end a single hook. Introduce the barb or dart end into the bait's mouth, and bring it out near the tail; the lead is then in the bait's belly, and the hook just within its mouth, which must be sewed up with some white thread. I have noticed this hook, and given a cut of

it, merely because they are become scarce, the hook being generally rejected by all experienced Trollers of the present day, as not worth notice.

Dead Snap, with three Hooks.

THIS snap is fitted as follows:—Take three hooks of the size No. 2, and tie them all together, back to back, firmly on one end of about twelve inches of strong gimp; let the other end be formed in a loop, *(see the Cut);* then, having provided a dead-bait Fish, take your baiting needle, and hang the loop of the gimp to it; then enter the point of the needle in the vent of the bait (but do not penetrate too deep in the body), and bring it out at its mouth: draw the gimp after, until the hooks lay at the bait-fish's vent; then pass over the gimp a bead drop-lead, and place it inside the bait's mouth, which must then be sewed up, and all is ready for fixing to the trolling-line. Note:—This snap should be baited with a large bait-fish, either a Roach or Dace, say from six to eight ounces weight, and in extensive pieces of water which contain heavy Pike, especially at the time when the weeds are rotten or gone; this snap, so baited, will be found very effective, and worthy the Angler's attention.

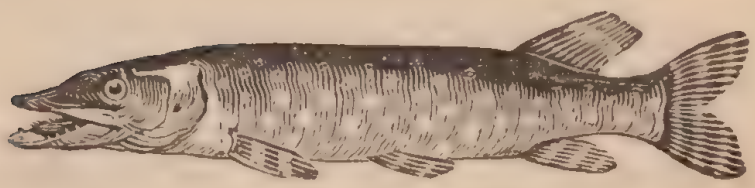


Dead Snap, with two Hooks.

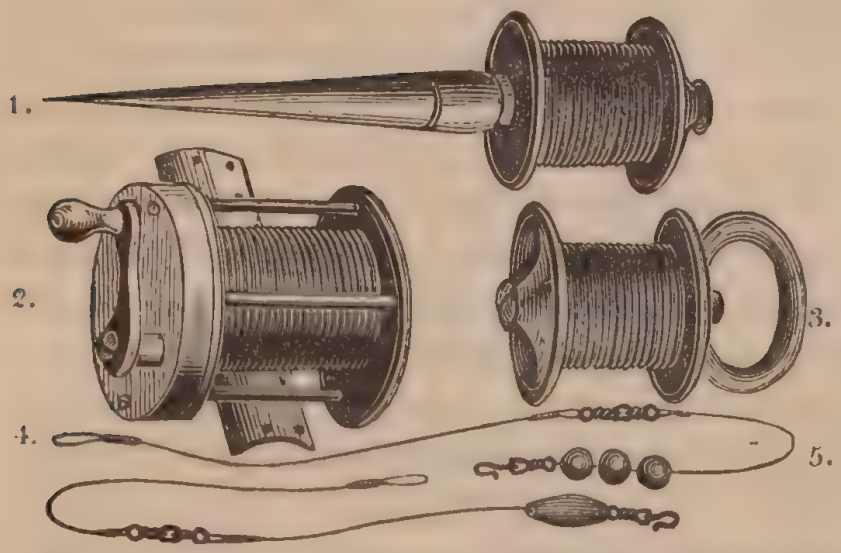
FIT this snap in the following manner:—Tie two hooks of the size No. 1, very firmly to about twelve inches of stout gimp, which should have a loop at the other end: now take a baiting needle, and fix it to the loop of the gimp, and enter the point of the needle into a large dead-bait fish's vent; but do not penetrate too deep in its body, for when so, and you strike, the hooks are somewhat confined, and do not fix so firmly in the Jack or Pike as if they laid nearer the skin, which is torn away with a strong jerk in striking; bring it out at its mouth, and fix the lead in the bait's mouth, and sew the same up, (as described in the preceding article, baiting with three hooks;) and all is then ready to fasten to the trolling-line. ' *(See the Hooks, and the same baited in the Cut.)*

Now, having described various, and as many hooks, with the best way to bait them for killing Jack and

Pike as I think are worth notice, I shall next direct the reader how to choose the trolling line, rod, winch, &c.; also, discourse on the nature of bait-fish for Jack and Pike-fishing, pointing out the reason why a Gudgeon should be preferred (generally) to a Roach, Dace, or Bleak, for trolling with the gorge-hook, or for live-bait-fishing; also, when Roach, Dace, or Bleak, are useful baits, with full directions to select the same, in respect to size, and to keep them alive during a day's fishing; or to preserve those which are dead, fresh and sweet when going a distance from home, either to troll with the gorge, or snap-fishing; for which purpose, a proper bait-kettle and box are recommended.



CHAP. V.



No. 1. Bank Runner. No. 2. Multiplying Winch. No. 3. Thumb Winder. No. 4. Trace with three Swan Shot. No. 5. Trace, with Dip Lead.

Trolling Lines, Winch, and Thumb Winders, Bank Runners, Traces, &c.

TROLLING lines are usually made of silk, also of silk and hair, or mohair of various lengths and strength, by platting, spinning, or twisting several strands together. There are silk lines, called India twist, sold at the fishing-tackle shops, and at some of the china shops, and other shops in London. This India twist may be bought of any length and degree of strength and fineness, at something less per yard than what is manufactured in this country; but it is much inferior in strength and value, because it is full of gum when you

first purchase it, and after some little wear and tear the gum is gone; the line then soon untwists and becomes rotten, therefore very unfit for Jack and Pike-fishing. The platted silk lines are the best for trolling, in every sense of the word; they are stronger than those which are twisted. Let the twisted be made wholly of silk, or silk and hair, or mohair. Platted silk lines are also less inclined to kink or tangle than the twisted, which every Troller knows is of some consequence; therefore my advice is to provide yourself with a platted silk line, (the colour immaterial,) made of about eight strands, and in length from fifty to sixty yards. If you wish to make your line water-proof, dress it in the following manner: lay the line in coils, in a large tumbler or basin, and pour as much cold-drawn double-boiled linseed oil on it as will cover the whole; let it lay a few minutes, then take the end last put in, and gradually draw all the line out of the tumbler or basin, and pass it through or wipe it with a piece of woollen cloth or flannel, which will make the surface smooth, and the whole line will be alike saturated with the oil. Hang the line up for a few days in dry air, and it will then be fit for use.—*Note.* Some Trollers think this dressing a line, causes it sooner to rot; but I am not of that opinion. I find a line so dressed is less likely to kinkle, or stick to the rod, than those without it, and also that the dressed line passes quicker through the rings when you make a cast, in consequence of its not imbibing much water, and from its being a little stiff: when choosing a

winch, prefer one without a lock or stop, and also those which are made to tie on the rod, because you can tie on such to any sized joint or rod, or have them let in a groove and fastened by brass ferules, which is not the case with those made with a hoop and screw; for if the rod be too large to pass through the hoop, or the hoop too large for the rod, much inconvenience is experienced: those made to tie on may also be fixed to the butt by brass ferules, which the tackle-makers provide. Some Anglers keep their line on a wooden thumb-winder, *(see the Cut, fig.* 3,*)* and others use a bank runner, *(see the Cut, fig.* 1,*)* for the same purpose; but I prefer a winch, because I have my line and rod more compact, and it enables me to troll over high sags, rushes, bushes, &c. which are often met with about the sides of rivers, and large pieces of water; and under the cover or shade of such places, Jack and Pike are often found.

The Angler, having provided himself with line, winch, &c., should now fit up some traces, *(see the Cut, figs.* 4 *and* 5,*)* or get his tackle-maker to do it for him in the following manner: take two pieces of gimp or twisted gut, about ten inches each in length, and join them together very neatly and strong, with a box swivel; then tie on at one end of the gimp a hook swivel, and at the other end make a loop of the gimp; observe—the hook swivel should be made strong, particularly the hook part of it, because in putting on and off the loop of gimp to which the hook or hooks are tied, Anglers from the hurry of the moment, some-

times use more violence than is necessary, and besides, when a heavy Fish is hooked, much stress is laid on this swivel while killing it. Note.—For live-bait-fishing, a trace, made of a foot of gimp, looped at one end, and a hook swivel on the other, answers as well as two swivel traces, and is more easily made and used.

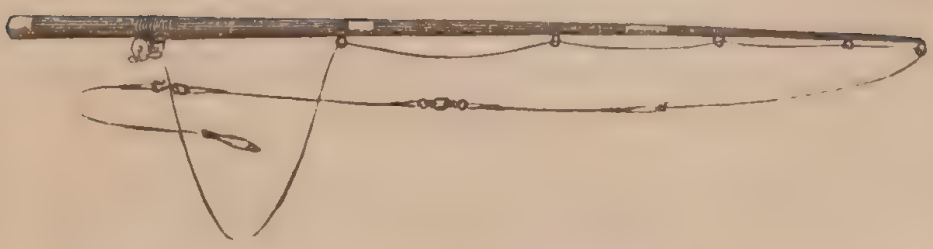
When you use a live-bait for Jack-fishing, and a float on the trolling line, and to which line you fix traces, those traces must be leaded so as to sink the float to a certain depth; for which purpose you may use a dip-lead, or three or four swan shots; the dip-lead or shot should be fixed just above the hook swivel, as represented in the Cut at the head of the Chapter. *(see Cuts 4 and 5).* When trolling with the gorge-hook, or snap-fishing with a dead bait, no lead is wanted on the traces, because the gorge-hook is leaded on the shank: and all hooks that are used, baited with a dead bait in snap-fishing, have a drop-lead attached to them, which may be seen by a reference to the Cuts of them in Chap. IV.

I make it a rule always to have a spare trace or two in my tackle book ready fitted, of gimp and twisted gut, either for trolling, snap-fishing, or live-bait-fishing, that in case of accident, I may lose no time in repairing, &c. when at my sport, but leave that job for a rainy day at home. In the Summer months, when the waters get low and bright, from a continuance of dry weather, I have found, when I used traces made of the choicest twisted gut, instead of gimp

and hooks also tied to twisted gut, that I have killed more Jack and Pike, either when trolling with the gorge, or when live-bait-fishing, than I could if I used gimp; this, you are to observe, is only necessary during the Summer, when Jack and Pike are not much on the feed, or when the water is very bright; they then seem shy of coarse tackle; but not so in Winter and Spring, for then they are well on the feed, and the water generally somewhat discoloured, at which time and seasons, I believe Jack and Pike would take a baited hook, if it was tied to a clothes' line or rope. Those Anglers who object to the trouble of fitting or using traces, may certainly kill both Jack and Pike without them, by simply fixing their baited hook-link to the trolling-line, either by looping, hanging it to a swivel, or by a draw-bow knot. The Angler who uses the knot, should be careful and examine his line frequently, because the drawing and undrawing the said knot, soon injures the line, and at that part where much strength is wanted; therefore, a few inches must be cut off the line before it is too much used, or the Angler will probably lose a Jack or Pike, with hooks, gimp, &c. Swivels and traces enable the Troller to cause his bait to have a twirling or spinning motion, which frequently stimulates a Jack or Pike to strike at it; this particularly applies when a dead bait is used. Note:—That traces made with the best salmon-gut, twisted, cause the bait to spin much better than if made of gimp, and are sufficiently strong to kill a Pike almost of any size; and further observe, on

traces, that the play of the swivels also eases the stress on the rod while you are killing a heavy Fish. Note:—If you live-bait Fish for Jack or Pike with a floated line, without traces, a dip-lead is better than shot to sink the float, because the float is first put on the trolling line, then the shot below it on the said line; and when so done, you cannot get the float off again without the trouble of removing the shot, for they will not pass through either the ring or cap of the float; but if you use a dip-lead, it is put on the line and removed in an instant. Dip-leads are made of a long barrel shape, with a hole through them, and are kept ready for sale, of various sizes, by most of the fishing-tackle makers in London: but if those dip-leads are not easily to be met with, one or two small pistol-bullets, cast with a hole through them, will be found a good substitute, although they do not look quite so neat on the line as either split shot or dip-leads. The Angler will notice that I have directed the traces to be made of two pieces each, about ten inches long; and also note, that the hooks used for live-bait fishing should be tied to lengths of gimp of eight or nine inches long; because, if the traces and hook-lengths are longer, the float must be placed on the traces, which looks awkward and clumsy. In respect to traces used when trolling with the gorge, or at the snap, the length is immaterial.

CHAP. VI.



Rods proper for Trolling, or Jack and Pike Fishing, and how to Troll without a Rod.

A GOOD trolling-rod should be made of the choicest stout and well-seasoned bamboo cane; in length it should not be shorter than fourteen feet; but sixteen is more desirable, if your tackle-maker can furnish cane every way fit for the purpose of striking true, and not too heavy, yet sufficiently strong; but if bamboo, of a sufficient length, &c., is not to be procured, the tackle-makers use other light wood for the butt, generally well-seasoned willow; those Anglers who are indifferent about the weight of a rod, may have them made of solid wood, in four joints, each measuring nearly a yard and a half; such trolling-rods will almost last for ever. When trolling with the gorge, or live-bait-fishing, a long rod is necessary, to enable the Angler to drop in his baited hook over high sags, rushes, &c.; and also if the water is bright, he should then keep as far away from it as he possibly can, which a long rod enables him to do, while dipping, casting, or spinning his bait; for, if

either a Jack or Pike see him, it is very rare indeed that he will then take the bait. And again, with a long rod you will be able to drop your baited hook in some very likely place for Jack or Pike to lay, such as a small hole, division, or clear place, among a bed of weeds, in a river, or any other water, where there are many weeds; but if your rod be too short for that purpose your baited hook frequently falls short when cast, or among the weeds, instead of the open place, which you desire or wish it to fall into; in such case, Jack or Pike are alarmed, and your chance of getting a run (a run, in Jack or Pike fishing, is a bite) is lost, and frequently the bait is spoiled or much injured, by catching or hanging to the weeds; you then have to bait your hook afresh, losing time, &c.; from which mishaps, you are, perchance, sometimes near losing your temper, forgetting that hope and patience support the Fisherman.

There is some difference of opinion among Anglers about the number of rings necessary for trolling rods; those who have their line on a thumb-winder, or on a bank-runner, seldom place more than two or three rings on their rod, and others have only a large ring at the top: but if a winch is used, there should be a ring to every joint, except the butt; that is, fasten the winch to the butt, about a foot from the bottom, and let that joint be without a ring, and all the other joints, except the top, to have a ring, each made of double brass wire, fixed so as always to stand out, and nearly large enough to admit the top of your

little finger; the top joint should have two rings; the top one nearly three times the size of the other. *(See the cut, Chap. VI. of a Trolling Rod, Line, and Traces with gorge-hook baited.)* This prevents any obstruction to the line running, which is of material consequence. I have two tops to my trolling rod, which I always carry with me, in case of breaking one, &c.: one is made very flexible, with wood, and a whalebone tip, about two feet long; to this, for strength and security, I have a ring on the wood part as well as the large one at the whalebone tip: this top I always use when trolling with the gorge-bait, or when fishing with live-bait; the other top is made wholly of stout whalebone, about one foot long; this I only use when snap-fishing. which it is well calculated for, by its superior strength and stiffness.

Those Anglers who may object to have such large rings as I have described fastened on their rods, so as always to stand out instead of laying close to the rod, because they prevent the several joints packing one within another, and, consequently augment the bulk to be carried, going to and from trolling, can have such rings, if they prefer them to those which lay close, fixed to metal ferules, made to fit each joint of the rod, which they may carry in their pocket, and put them on or off at the commencement, and leaving off trolling or Jack-fishing, except the top joint, which, with the rings on, will pack in the butt or largest joint of the trolling rod, or, by using such rings and ferules, a Roach-rod may be used for trolling, leaving out the weak top

joint. Some Anglers use a few small brass curtain-rings sewed to loops of leather, and pass the loop over each joint of a stout walking-cane rod, made with long joints, and without rings, the rings hanging outwards, through which rings the trolling line runs; these leather loops are made in a similar manner to those which you may see in the fishing-tackle shops, passed over, as the means of keeping together, the several joints of hazel and other common fishing rods.

There are a few Anglers who troll from the shore without a rod, only using a pole or stick, with a forked top; they carry their line on a bank-runner or a hand-winder: after baiting the hook and letting out a proper length of line, they then pass the fork of the stick or pole under the line, about a yard above the baited hook, and cast out in search, and occasionally use the said fork to hoist the line over, &c. the high sags, sedges, rushes, or whatever else may impede their progress. This mode of Jack or Pike-fishing can be resorted to by an Angler who may beat a water which promises sport, and he, unfortunately, is without a proper rod; unless this happens, I think few Anglers would so troll or fish for Jack or Pike; but, when trolling from a boat, this method of Jack-fishing is, in some cases, certainly useful, and can be then more conveniently practised.

Having discoursed, I hope, both plainly and sufficiently on hooks, lines, and rods, I shall now proceed to direct the reader how to select the best and most proper baits for trolling or Jack-fishing, during the different seasons of the year.

CHAP. VII.

Baits for Trolling and Jack-fishing.

THE Fish which Jack and Pike chiefly feed on, are Gudgeons, Roach, Dace, Bleak, Minnows, and small Trout, and Chub; they will certainly take any other sort of Fish, Tench excepted; (see the reason for this opinion, in the observations on Jack, &c. in Chap. X.) and they will even feed on their own species, and, occasionally, attack the Perch, notwithstanding its formidable back fin. But when the Angler can get a sufficient number of Gudgeons, Roach, or Dace, of a proper size, either alive or very fresh, to bait his hook with, he may rest assured that he possesses the best baits for trolling or Jack-fishing that the waters produce. Among those three choice baits, the Gudgeon is the most useful, either for trolling with the gorge-hook, or in live-bait fishing; for, in trolling, the Gudgeon spins better in the water, from the rotundity of its shape, than Roach or Dace, and it is also thicker in its body, and, therefore, the Jack or Pike, when they strike at it, are not so likely to feel the lead in its belly or throat; the Gudgeon is also a very clean-feeding Fish, and is always so sweet, or well-flavoured, that the experienced Angler knows when Jack or Pike strike a Gudgeon; they less seldom blow it out of their mouths again instead of pouching it, than any other bait. The same reason holds in respect to live-bait fishing; moreover

Gudgeons will swim stronger, and live longer on the hook than other Fish, and also keep low in the water; whereas Roach, Dace, and particularly Bleak, endeavour to reach or swim near the surface of the water; and if the Jack or Pike follows and sees the Angler, he generally refuses the bait and retires.

The next best bait, I consider, is a Roach, and, during the months of January, February, and March, I use it in preference to a Gudgeon: the best size to choose a Gudgeon, Roach, or Dace, for trolling with the gorge, or in live-bait-fishing for Jack or Pike, is about five or six inches in length; but when you go snap-fishing, a larger bait is preferable, because Jack or Pike will frequently seize a large bait, though they will not pouch it, which is a losing game for the gorge Troller, or live-bait Fisher; but not so with the snap Angler, because, the instant the Jack or Pike strikes his bait, the Angler, with a strong jerk, fixes the hook into either Pike or Jack, and as a large bait is most attracting, of course the snap Fisher should prefer it to a small one.

The next bait in value to Gudgeons and Roach, are Dace and Bleak; if you cannot procure any of those four baits, you may take any small Fish (Tench excepted) you can procure, and with any of them you may kill Jack or Pike. But, note: if you ever use a Jack for a bait, it should not exceed half a pound in weight; and if you bait your hook with a Perch, be sure to cut away the dorsal fin very close to the back before you begin fishing with it. I have killed Jack

in the ponds in Tilney Park, Wanstead, by baiting snap-hooks with a Smelt, and also with a Sprat: this has happened in the winter months, at which season Jack and Pike are much distressed for food in ponds; and I have been told they have been killed by baiting with a small-sized fresh herring; of which I doubt not. Jack are also sometimes taken in ponds, and other still waters, (but seldom in rapid rivers) by baiting with a dead frog; to do which, put the loop of the gimp into the frog's mouth, and draw it out at its tail, exactly the same as if it were a fish-bait; then draw the hook (which should be a small gorge-hook) close to the mouth, and tie its hind legs to the gimp, and all is ready to fix to the trolling-line. If you use a frog for live-bait-fishing, with a float, use a single No. 4 or 5 hook, and fix it through the frog's lip, or by the skin of its rump, the frog then will live a long time in the water, and swim strong. If a frog is used for a snap-bait, hook it through the skin on the back, and strike soon after the float disappears.

Trusting the reader is now made sufficiently acquainted with the materials for Trolling, I shall immediately proceed to the practical part of the art of taking Jack and Pike with rod, line, and hook: but, first, let me inform the London Angler, that the places most be depended upon for purchasing live Gudgeons, Minnows, &c., are Mr. Jacob's, Fishmonger, No. 30, Duke Street, Aldgate; and Mr. Holmes's Fishing-tackle shops, No. 123, Fetter Lane, and No. 34, King Street, Covent Garden.

CHAP. VIII.

THE TROLLER'S DAY;

Accompanied with Directions how and where to place the Winch on the Rod—To cast the Baited Gorge-hook—To take Jack or Pike—To land and unhook them, &c.

About ten o'clock, the latter end of the month of October, 1818, the weather being very favourable for trolling, and the water of a good colour, I walked to the river Lea; where, by appointment, I met a young Angler, with a haversack slung over his shoulder, a trolling-rod under his arm, and, in his pocket, a book of trolling-tackle *(See the Cut, fig. 2. chap. 1)*, consisting of hooks of various sizes, baiting-needles, silk, thread, a disgorger, scissors, &c.; also a box, with half-a-dozen bait-fish in it, well-sprinkled with bran; and inside his jacket (on the left-hand side) he had placed a landing-hook (the point of which was stuck fast into a cork, to prevent it accidentally injuring

Trolling with the Gorge.

him in case of a slip or fall), fixed to a telescope-jointed rod. Some Anglers hang the hook through a button-hole, on the left-hand side of their coat or jacket, always taking care to secure the point from injuring them. My young friend was waiting very anxiously for my arrival. On looking at my watch, I found it not yet quite the time we agreed to meet; however, perceiving his impatience to wet a line, I spent but little time in complimenting him on the punctuality of his keeping the time agreed on to meet, and on his having all the necessary tackle, bait-fish, &c., in the best order, but immediately directed him to proceed in the following manner :—

First, put your rod together, fix the joints one within the other firmly: and mind, while so doing, that the rings on the different joints are in a direct line with each other to the large ring at the top: by which means, the line from the winch will then run in a straight direction, consequently, much more free than if the rings were in a zig-zag or crooked line. Now fix the winch about ten inches up the butt of the rod, in a line with the rings on the other joints, and draw some of the line from the winch, passing it through every ring, and out of the top large one. Continue to draw as much line out, as about half the length of the rod to the end of the line, and now fasten your trace to the trolling line; that is right; all very well. Next, bait a gorge-hook, in the following manner :—take a baiting-needle and hook; tie the curved end of it to the loop of the gimp (to which

the hook is tied), then introduce the point of the needle into the bait-fish's mouth, and bring it out at the middle of the fork part of its tail; the lead will then be hid inside the bait's belly, and the shank of the hook will lie inside its mouth, the barbs and points outside, turning upwards. To keep the bait steady on the hooks, tie the tail part of it just above the fork to the gimp, with white thread; or through the flesh, about half-an-inch above the tail, encircling the gimp, the thread passing under and over it, and then fix it to the hook swivel of the trace, and all will be ready for casting in search of Jack or Pike, *(see the Cut Chap.* VI.) Now, take the rod in your right hand, grasping it just above the winch, (*see the Cut of Trolling with the gorge,*) and rest the butt end of it against the lower side of your stomach, or the upper part of your thigh, and with your left hand draw a yard more of the trolling line from the winch, which you must hold lightly, until, with a jerk from the right arm, you cast the baited hook in the water. When the jerk is given, let the line which you hold in the left hand pass from its hold gradually, that the baited hook may not be checked, when cast out, by holding the line too fast; or that it may fall short of where you wish to place it, which it will do, if you let go of it altogether, immediately you have made a jerk, or cast it from the right arm.

By noticing these observations, and with a little practice, you may, without labour, cast a baited hook to many yards distance, and almost to an inch of the

spot you think likely to harbour a Jack or Pike. Many Anglers troll with the rod held in their hand, instead of letting the butt end rest against them; but hey cannot cast out their baited hook, when so carrying the rod, with so much precision, nor with so little exertion, as those who rest it against their stomach or thigh. Now you have every thing ready, cast in the baited-hook just over and beyond those candock weeds; let the bait sink, nearly to touching the bottom; now draw it gradually upwards, till it is near the surface of the water; let it sink again; now draw it upwards, and also a little to the right and left; let it sink again, and draw it up slowly, and step back a little from the water, and gradually draw the bait nearer the shore: all very fair, but no luck; the next cast-in-search, throw a few yards further out: very well; draw and sink, as before, to the right and left, &c.; but yet, I see, you cannot move a Fish. We will try another place. Aye, here is a likely place, on my word, to find a Fish! Observe, the sags and rushes are very thick, and reach nearly all round this bend or bay of the river; and I see there are a few weeds, but they do not appear very strong, and the current and eddy is only strong enough to keep the water lively. Now put on a fresh bait, a choice one. Ah! let me see; threadle this Gudgeon; I think this spot deserves every attention. Now cast in your bait, about two yards beyond those sags, directly where I stand. Very well; that is a neat and fair throw; draw up slowly and carefully. Something has snatched or pulled your

line violently, you say?—Bravo! you have a run: lower the point of your rod towards the water, and, at the same time, draw the line, with your left hand, gradually from the winch, that nothing may impede the line from running free, or check the Jack or Pike; either one or the other of which, at a certainty, has taken your baited hook.—Ah! the Fish stops; I see he has not run more than two yards of line out, therefore you found him at home. Now, by my watch, I see he has laid still seven minutes—very well; but have a little more patience. Oh! now I see the line shakes; all is right. Ah! he moves—he runs! wind up the slack line, turn the rod, that the winch may be uppermost instead of underneath, and strike, but not violently; and keep the point of your rod a little raised, for I have no doubt, by his laying so long still, that he has got the hook safe enough in his pouch: he makes towards the middle of the river, and seems inclined to go up the stream. You say he feels heavy and swims low; all is right again; believe me, he is a good Fish: I see there are some very strong candock-weeds a-head, and he appears desirous of gaining them; try and turn him, by holding your rod to the left instead of the right, and lead him back to the place from whence he started. That is still fortunate, he turns kindly: ah! now he strikes off again; very well, let him go; now, wind him again: again he is off; steady, steady; mind your line; do not distress it by keeping it too tight on your Fish. Now he makes shorter journeys, and seems inclined to come in

shore. Very well, you may now wind, and hold a little tighter on him, and feel if he will allow you to raise and show him; but be collected and careful. That is well done! I see, he is a Fish worth bagging; but keep steady, and have your line all free, for he will, for a short time, be more violent than ever. Try and lead him down to yon opening, at which place, I see, the water is nearly on a level with the marsh (a famous place, indeed, to land a Fish, especially if the Angler is alone, and without a landing hook); he seems a good deal weakened, yet the danger is not all passed. Now draw him nearer the shore, and again raise and give him a little fresh air. Ah!

now he is angry, and growing desperate; but keep steady, for I think we are all right. See, how he extends his monstrous jaws, shewing his numerous teeth, red gills, and capacious throat. Observe, how he shakes his head, and flings himself over and out of the water, as if he was determined to break

and destroy the strongest tackle; but steady; keep all clear and free. Now bring him near the shore again, still he shakes himself violently, and has thrown another somerset in the air; it is all very well! Give him a few turns more, and he will be tame enough; now draw him close in shore. I see he is quite exhausted, and floats motionless on his side; hold his head a little up, that the jaw or gills do not touch or hang to a weed. That is it. Now grasp him with both hands just below the head and shoulders, behind the gills, and hoist or chuck him a few yards on the grass. Well done, and a handsome Fish you have got for your pains; it is a female Pike, I see, and in excellent condition, and I believe it weighs eight pounds, at least. Now, my boy, bag the Fish, and put on another baited hook; for, I would have you recollect, it frequently happens, that you will find a brace of Pike in such a place as this, of a similar size, though of different sexes. After a few throws, my young Angler had another run, and was fortunate enough to kill the Fish, which proved a male Pike, seemingly within half a pound weight of the female. During the remainder of this day's trolling, we bagged a third Fish about four pounds weight: I then said, Enough; do not distress the water. We then withdrew to a comfortable inn, on the river side, for refreshment; and while taking our wine, and at other opportunities, I gave him further information on Trolling and Jack-fishing, which the reader will find in this and the following Chapters.

Trolling continued.

When trolling for Jack or Pike, make it a rule to keep as far from the water as you can, and always commence by casting in search near the shore side, with the wind at your back; but if the water and weather is very bright, fish against the wind. After trying closely, make your next throw further in the water, and draw and sink the baited hook, by pulling and casting the line with your left hand, while raising and lowering the rod with your right, drawing it straight upwards, near the surface of the water, and also to the right and left, searching carefully every foot of water, and draw your bait against and across the stream, which causes it to twirl or spin; and then,

by its glistening, &c. in the water, it is sure to attract and excite either Jack or Pike to seize it; and note, when the water is very bright, it is absolutely necessary that your tackle should be of the finest and neatest sort: and that you draw and spin the baited hook smartly and quickly against and across the stream, or you will not be successful, for coarse tackle, and merely sinking and drawing at such times, will not do. Be particularly careful, in drawing up or taking the baited hook out of the water, not to do it too hastily, because you will find, by experience, that the Jack or Pike strike or seize your bait more frequently when you are drawing it upwards, than when it is sinking. And, also, further observe, that when drawing your bait slowly upwards, if you occasionally lightly shake the rod, it will cause the bait to spin and twirl about, which, as before observed, is very likely to attract either Jack or Pike.

In the bends of rivers, and those parts out of the rapid current, Jack and Pike generally lay, and also where there are many weeds; and when you find a hole or opening between them, then cautiously drop in your baited hook; and if you feel, in this or any other place, a sudden tug or snatch, (which is a bite or run,) give line, as before directed; and when the Jack or Pike ceases to take or run out your line and lay still, do not strike in less time than ten minutes after, for, if you strike too soon, you have little chance; but if the Jack or Pike has pouched, he cannot get away, if he is not struck for an hour after he has

taken the bait; but if they shake the line and move, after they have remained still about two or three minutes, you may conclude the Fish has pouched the bait, and feels the hooks; then wind up your slack line, and strike, but not violently; and always mind to keep the point of your rod a little raised, while you are playing and killing your Fish. On the other hand, if you have a run, and the Fish lays still for a minute or so, and moves a little way and stops, and perhaps moves a third time, do not strike, for he has not yet pouched; but let him remain ten minutes, for, perhaps, he may be disturbed by a larger Fish making his appearance, and, in consequence, he first endeavours to get away, fearing the larger will dispossess him of his prey; therefore, in such cases, it is the safest way to give time, or put on a snap-hook.

When you have a run, and the Fish lays still, and you are disposed to lay your rod down, be careful so to place it, that nothing can impede the winch and line acting freely, and stand handy to act as circumstances may require; for, sometimes, a heavy Fish, when he feels the hook, will make a sudden and most violent rush towards the middle, or up the river; and, in an instant, rod, winch, and all, are drawn into the water, or the line broken,

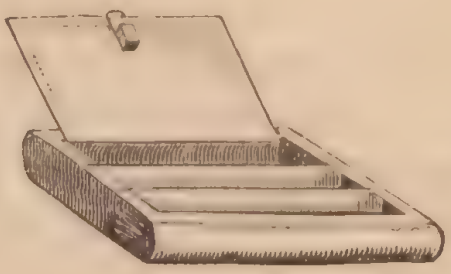
When you have hooked or played a Fish until he is quite weakened, and there are high sags or rushes before you, in which he will endeavour to entangle himself, or you are on a high bank, the safest way to land your prize then is, by fixing a landing hook in him,

either through his lips, or under his lower jaw; because, while weighing out or lifting up a heavy Fish, and he is slightly hooked, perhaps in the brittle part of his throat, mouth, or gills, the hook will tear from its hold, or, if he struggles, he is very likely to break either rod or line; or, probably, his pouch may draw out, and you thereby lose your prize; therefore you should always carry a hook of this kind with you. The most portable are those made to screw into a jointed telescope-rod, *(see the Cut in Chap. I.)* which all the principal fishing-tackle shops keep ready for sale; and as sometimes you may want to increase the length of this, you should have the end of it made of a size to fit in the two strongest joints of your trolling-rod. Some Trollers carry, also, a large-sized landing-net with them, the worm or screw of which is made to fit the landing-hook rod; for, when a net can be conveniently used, I think it much the safer way; and, as the nets are placed on jointed hoops, they take up but little room, either in the pocket or elsewhere, therefore it is advisable to carry both hook and net. You may carry this landing hook very conveniently slung to the inside of your jacket or coat, on the left side thereof, having a narrow long pocket made to receive it; or hanging from, or through a button-hole, only taking special care to prevent an accident, by securing the point in a stout piece of cork.

Observe, when Trolling, Live-bait-fishing, or Snap-fishing, you should bait the hook the last thing; that is, after you have put the rod, line, &c. together,

because it is essential to offer the Jack or Pike a bait exceedingly fresh and sweet; also, make it a rule to put a fresh bait on when you find the present one is torn, or becomes water-sopped; and be careful to remove any piece of weed, &c. that may have hung to a bait, before you cast in again, for Jack or Pike will seldom take a stale or sopped bait, nor one on which hang weeds, grass, or anything else. When you go for a day's trolling with the gorge, provide a tin box, sufficiently large to hold six Fish-baits lying at their full length, and put under, between, and over them, some clean bran, which will absorb the moisture from their bodies, and keep them sweet for a long time; and they will also remain longer firm and stiff. I generally use a square tin box, with hinges and a slip clasp, of the following dimensions, viz. from seven to eight inches long, about five inches broad, and two deep: the inside of the box should be divided into three or four parts by slips of tin that fall into grooves, *(see the Cut.)* By placing the baits in those divisions, it keeps them straight; and by sprinkling them well with bran, the baits will keep of their natural shape, and remain sweet. The Troller, who takes the trouble so to preserve his baits, will find his success greatly exceed those who carelessly wrap their bait-fish up in paper; the box for baits should be japanned, otherwise it soon becomes rusty, and then requires much trouble to keep it in a clean state, fit to receive bait-fish. Note:—A large-sized Sandwich box, (sold at all the principal tin shops,) with the addition of the sliding partitions,

makes an excellent bait-box. By taking out those partitions, the box is easily cleaned, which should always be done immediately after you return from trolling.



When I have been obliged to start early in a morning from town to a distance, for a day's trolling, I have packed my baits the last thing over night, and sprinkled them with a little salt, as well as with bran, and thought it kept them longer, and in a better state for use.

When you are trolling with the gorge, you will find that either Jack or Pike will sometimes take your bait eagerly, and hold it several minutes by its body across their mouth, *(see the Cut;)* and then throw, drop, or

Jack taking a bait.

blow it from them, instead of pouching it. You, possibly try another kind of bait, and cast it in again; you have a run, but you are disappointed; the Jack or Pike will not pouch the bait, but drop it: when this occurs,

you may be assured the Fish are more on the play than on the feed. This being the case, convert your gorge to a snap, in the manner directed in Chap. IV. the dead-snap with four hooks, and you will generally succeed in taking or killing the tantalizer.

Note:—Among my trolling-tackle, I always carry with me two or three pieces of stick, from two to three inches long, to use as a gag when I have hooked either Jack or Pike in the throat; I can then easily get my hook away without cutting or disfiguring the Jack or Pike, (supposing the hook to be a favourite one, and I prefer using it to any other,) by gagging or propping his mouth open, with a piece of stick. I can then, with a disgorger about nine or ten inches long, (which you may have made either of ivory, brass, or iron, for the common bone-disgorgers are not long enough for the Troller's purpose,) get away the hook, and save my fingers from the Fish's teeth; but if the Jack or Pike has pouched it, the better way then to unhook him is to make an opening in his belly, near the throat, and carefully cut away the parts to which the hooks hang, and draw the hooks and gimp out of the opening. If this operation is done neatly, and it is very easy so to do with a sharp-pointed knife, the Jack or Pike will be very little disfigured.

In landing heavy Jack or Pike, it is best to use a landing hook, or to grasp them firmly with both hands just below the gills; for, though it is generally recommended to press your thumb and finger in their eyes, and so lift them, yet I have known many instances of

good Fish being lost by this method; for, if they struggle much, very few can hold them by a thumb and finger, which is placed in the socket of the Pike's eye. This method does very well with small Jack; but even those I have seen dropped and lost by the momentary alarm caused by the Jack (which seemed quite exhausted) suddenly gasping, twisting, and struggling. When Jack-fishing with a winch attached to a Rod, cast out your bait with the winch hanging under your hand, as represented in the plate of Trolling; because, when the rod is so held, the line rests wholly upon the rings, and runs free, which it will not always do if held the reverse way, especially when the line becomes wet, as it is then apt to stick to the rod, &c,; but when you have a run, and are about to strike, turn the rod, that the winch may be uppermost, because the weight, &c. of the Fish, while you are playing him, will be then on the rod; but if the winch is underneath, the whole rests on the rings, some of which may probably break away from the whipping and entangle the line, or chafe it, so as to endanger the loss of the Jack or Pike you have hooked.

CHAP IX.

Full Directions for taking Jack and Pike with a Live-Bait and Floated Line—Proper Kettles, &c. for carrying Live-Baits described—Various ways of using Snap-Hooks explained—and the proper Seasons and Weather, &c. for Trolling, pointed out.

When you intend going to Live-Bait Fish for Jack and Pike, you should adjust your tackle in the following manner:—first, fix a winch to the rod, and draw the line through the rings thereof, as directed in the preceding article, (trolling with the gorge-hook), and then put the cork float on the trolling-line. I prefer a cork without either a plug or quill, in place of which I use a piece of ivory, lance wood, or whalebone, to keep the line in its place, after having passed it through the cork; for which purpose, put the piece of ivory,

or whalebone, in the hole, at the top of the cork, by way of a plug, and only let about a quarter of an inch appear above the cork. I have found the large-sized cribbage-pegs, made of ivory, and sold at the toy-shops, the best thing for the purpose. By this contrivance the float is considerably shortened, which is also of consequence; because, when a Jack has taken your bait, and retires among weeds to pouch it, a long float often gets entangled therein, and checks or alarms the Jack, and he then drops the bait, instead of pouching it. A float of the size that will swim with about half an ounce of lead, and a bait-fish of five or six inches in length, will be found, generally speaking, the most useful; but when very small baits are used, and twisted gut instead of gimp, a smaller float will be requisite; then take the traces, (which are described in Chap. V.) fasten the line to the traces with a bow-draw knot: and, having baited your hook, fix that to the hook-swivel of the traces, and all is ready to cast in search. Cork floats sold at the tackle-shops are all bored through; therefore, if you choose to use them with a plug, as I have recommended and described above, you have only to remove the quill at the top, and the plug at the bottom, and you have then a cork fit for the purpose.

When the float is fixed at a proper distance from the baited hook, which as a general rule, observe, that it should be something less than three feet; but in very shoal water, or where there are many weeds, two feet above the hook will be a more proper distance

to fix the float; and in no case do I ever find or think it right to fix the float above the baited hook at a greater distance than between three and four feet.

If you choose to fish without traces, adjust the line, float, and baited hooks this way: first, put the float on the line; next put a dip-lead, or as many swan-shot on the line as is proper for the size of the float; dip-leads are to be preferred, because they are put on and off in an instant; *(see Dip-Leads described in Chap. V.)* whereas, it takes some time to put the shot on the line, and more to take them off again, which must be done, otherwise you cannot remove the float from the line, because the shot will be found too large to pass through the ring at the bottom of the float, or the cap at the top. Now, all this trouble and delay is obviated by using a dip-lead, or the traces fitted with swivels, &c. as described in Chap. V.—However, whether traces, dip-lead, or shot, are used, I will suppose the hooks to be baited in the manner described in the second article, *(Chap. III. and the Cut, fig. 2.)* and the float fixed in its proper place, &c. and the Angler at the water side, having, if possible the wind at his back; he must hold his rod and line exactly as described in the preceding article, (trolling with the gorge-hook,) and as represented in the cut at the head of this Chapter, excepting the hand represented as grasping the rod above the winch; but it may be held below the winch in live-bait fishing, if the Angler finds it more convenient to manage.

Cast your bait in very gently, and near the shore

first, always standing as far back from the water as you can, being able at the same time to see your float; if, after a few minutes, you have no success, advance a little nearer, and make another cast further in the water, or to the right or left. If the bait be lively, it will swim strong about, and make for the weeds, and there entangle itself, which you must prevent by drawing it gently away, but not out of the water. When the bait-fish becomes weak, which you will discover by the float not bobbing about much, you should draw him gently to and fro, at the same time shaking your rod a little, which will sometimes stimulate a Jack to seize it, fearing it is making its escape; though, while it is stationary, the Jack is seldom in a hurry about it, which proves the advantage of strong lively baits over the weak and languid: cast in search in all the bends, bays, and still parts of rivers, and in ponds, pools, &c., and also near and among beds of candock weeds, rushes, sedges, and retired places, in preference to rapid currents or whirling eddies, for such unsettled places Jack and Pike like not.

Observe, when you take your bait out of the water to cast it into another place, that you draw it slowly and gradually to the surface for that purpose, and not snatch it out; because Jack and Pike, when not very much on the feed, will only strike at the bait when it seems to be escaping from them: those who take their line out without the above caution, will often find a Jack strike at their bait, and, in their eagerness, sometimes throw themselves out of the water after it; but

by the quick movement of the Angler, the Jack seldom hits the bait; and if he does, he is generally so alarmed that he drops it again immediately. This fact is well known to old Anglers.

When a Jack or Pike seizes your live-bait, it is generally with violence, and the float is instantly drawn under water; therefore, be sure to keep your eye steadily on it, and also keep your winch and line free, always holding a yard or two of slack line in your left hand, that nothing may stop or impede the Jack or Pike when he has seized the bait, and is making for his haunt to pouch it: if he run very violently, keep drawing the line from the winch with your left hand, that he may not be checked; when he has got to the desired place, and then lays still, do not disturb him in less time than ten minutes after he has so laid; or if you give him a little longer time, it may not be amiss; for you are to know that when a Jack has got the baited hook in his pouch, he cannot possibly get it out again; but if you strike before he has so done, you generally pull the bait from his mouth without the hooks touching him; therefore, the only chance of losing either Jack or Pike after they have taken the bait is, in not giving them time enough to pouch it supposing them to be disposed to pouch; but, on the contrary, when you have a run, and the Jack or Pike goes some distance and stops a few moments, then moves again, stops a few moments as before, and a third time moves his quarters, you must not expect he will pouch, for he is then more on the play than on

the feed; or there are larger Jack or Pike about the spot, that prevents the one which has taken your bait from stopping, for fear of the stronger taking his prey rom him. However, it may be, when such a case occurs, as sometimes it will, with the third movement, wind up your line, and strike smartly the contrary way the Jack runs, and you may probably hook him in the chaps, throat, or gills; or you may change the hook, and use a snap with a live-bait, when you find the Fish will not pouch. Further: recollect, when you have a run, and the Jack or Pike remains still (after having taken the bait and gone a certain distance) for three minutes or more, and then shakes and tugs the line and moves away, wind up the slack line and strike, but not with much force; because, you will find, if either a Jack or Pike has laid still for three minutes or more, and then becomes restless, he has pouched the bait, (which they sometimes do the moment they take it,) and begins to feel the hooks.

When you have hooked a Fish while live-bait-fishing, act as directed with the gorge-hook, that is, do not strain on him too hard; keep him from heavy weeds and dangerous places as much as you can; and lastly, when bringing him (either Jack or Pike) to a convenient place for landing, and he becomes very quiet, be prepared to expect he will, when almost in your hands, make some desperate plunges, shaking his head, opening his mouth, shewing his red gills, &c. Prepare for this probable case with coolness; and when such occurs, let Mr. Jack or Pike have a few

more turns in his own element; and when he again becomes tractable, you may be more sanguine of bagging him. You are to note, that many very heavy Fish are lost through the anxiety of getting them on shore, and especially at the time the violent struggling takes place, which I have described; for then the Troller should yield to the Fish; but, on the contrary, the young Angler redoubles his efforts to drag the unwilling Fish on shore; but he frequently, by using such improper force, either breaks his tackle or draws the pouch out of the Jack or Pike's stomach, and of course, in either case, loses his prize. If you fish with one hook fixed to the bait's gills, in the manner described in Chap. III. fig. 1, you must pursue the same method as described in respect to giving the Jack or Pike time to pouch the bait when you have a run; but if you use a single hook, or three or five hooks, as described in Chap. III. fig. 1, 3, and 4, you then fish at snap; and instead of giving time to pouch, when you see your float taken down, by a Jack or Pike having seized your live bait, observe which way he goes, and after he has run a yard or so of line out, strike him with a lusty stroke, that some of the hooks may get a firm hold; then play, kill, and land him, *secundum artem*.—Note. When fishing with those one, three, or five hooks, just described, you may fix the necessary weight of shot or lead on the gimp, to which the hooks are tied, if you prefer it to putting them on the traces or trolling line, because you put on and off those hooks to the traces or line, the gimp not

passing under the skin of the bait-fish, as must be done when the hooks are threadled, or lay on the side or shoulder of the bait, as represented in the Cut, fig. 2, Chap. III.; for if the gimp be leaded, and drawn under the bait's skin, it rips nearly all the flesh of the bait, which is much disfigured, and soon dies.

When you go out for a day's live-bait-fishing, you should take about a dozen live Fish with you, principally Gudgeons, if you can procure them; because Gudgeons are a hardy strong Fish, swim well, and will bear more rough usage than any other bait-fish. Select all your baits from four and a half, to about five and a half inches in length, but not larger; and put them into a full sized kettle, which should be painted or japanned white inside, that you may easily select the bait you like without hurting the others; frequently, during your excursion, give them fresh water, and place the kettle out of the sun, or in the water, where you can conveniently get to it, and let it there remain till you move or want a bait.

I have found, that in putting my hand in the kettle, the bait-fish therein struggle and bounce about, and by so doing, rub their scales off, and otherwise injure each other; therefore I have a very small net, not much more than half the size of those used to take gold and silver Fish out of globes, &c. This net I carry very conveniently in my fish-kettle, by having a piece of the lid cut away at one corner, where a few inches of the handle of the net projects; but, instead, of the hole at the corner, I have found since a kettle

with a rim, about an inch wide, fixed all round the upper part of the inside of the kettle, prevents the water from splashing out better than any other way, particularly if you are going any distance, and have to carry your live-baits either for Jack or Perch fishing. When I use such a kettle, I carry the net in my basket or pocket. By using this net, I select which bait I may think proper, without much disturbing the others, or distressing them, by putting a hot hand among those cool-blooded animals. I prefer a longish square kettle to a round one, and always have mine japanned white inside and brown out; for the water is less agitated in such a shaped kettle, when you are carrying it, than in a round one; and it is more convenient to carry, or to pack in a basket, &c. for a journey *(see the Cut in the first Chapter, fig.* 1.) than those of a round form.

Observe, that you make it a rule to bait your hook the last thing, after all is complete in respect to float, line, &c. for the more lively and strong the bait swims, the greater the chance you have of a run, and the Fish pouching, instead of blowing it out; which, sometimes, is the case when Jack or Pike are not much on the feed, and the bait-fish not very lively or tempting. Also, recollect, that when trolling with the gorge, the snap, or live-bait-fishing in a place very likely for Jack or Pike to lay, do not leave after a throw or two, especially if you have seen a Fish move there at any former day, or if you have had a run in this place, and the Jack or Pike left your bait without

pouching; but continue to cast and fish every foot of water for a considerable time, and if not successful, try the same place on your return, or, as the gunner says, try back.

Snap-fishing for Jack or Pike with Dead Baits.

When you intend using snap-hooks, with dead baits, for Jack or Pike fishing, it is better to have a very stout top on your rod, (such as recommended in Chap. IV.) because much strength is required in striking when you feel a run; for it depends entirely upon the firm hold you have of the Fish, by one or more of the hooks having passed into, or through some part of the Jack or Pike's gills, jaws, or some other part: your gimp and line should also be very stout. I have described various kinds of hooks, and how to bait them with a dead Fish, for snap-fishing, in Chap. IV. Draw the line from the winch through all the rings of the rod, as directed in trolling with the gorge; loop on the traces (if you use traces) to the line, or fix them by a draw-knot, which you please; then bait your hook or hooks, and hang the gimp to which they are tied on the hook-swivel, at the bottom of the trace, by the loop; if you do not use traces, then you loop the gimp to the trolling line, or fasten it thereto with a slip draw-knot, which ever you like. All is ready then to cast or throw in search of Jack or Pike; but mind you hold the rod and line firmly grasped, that you may be enabled, the instant you feel a touch, to strike quick and with force; then proceed to play, and kill, and land

your prize, as directed in trolling with the gorge.—Note. Carry several baits with you in a box, as directed in Chap. VIII. ✝

Seasons and Weather proper for Trolling, and how to bring Jack or Pike ashore.

Jack and Pike will take a bait in every month during the year, but seldom very freely till September or October, which is quite early enough in the season to troll; because, though Jack or Pike spawn in March, yet they remain a long time after, very languid, weak, and sickly, and their bodies are long and thin, and their heads large, caring little for food until the cool mornings, evenings, and nights, of the Autumn approach; they then rapidly recover their appetite and strength, and soon become fat and well flavoured, and are in the best state for the table, from Michaelmas till the middle of February. It is with real regret, that the true sporting or gentleman Angler puts his trolling tackle together before September; but the misfortune is, that all the waters, within a considerable distance of London, are continually fished by poachers, and, in consequence of such practices, the different subscription waters allow trolling to commence in June or July. The Angler, from necessity, avails himself of this liberty to troll, because he argues, that he may as well kill a few Jack himself, as to pay an annual sum to a water, and leave them to the unfair Angler, who will kill all he can, and laugh, in his sleeve, at the other's forbearance. In September, the weeds, rushes

&c. have lost their sweetness and nutritious properties, and begin to grow thin, affording but little harbour, shelter, and food, for Fish; and, as the Winter approaches, those sedges, weeds, rushes, &c. rot, waste, and sink, or drift away with the floods; during which time, small Fish, Gudgeons especially, have left the shallows, and retired to deep holes under banks, shelves, piles, &c. which occasions Jack and Pike to be on the alert, finding much difficulty to satisfy their now ever-craving appetite. Therefore, at this season, every favourable day should be embraced by the lovers of trolling during the period above alluded to.—Note. Jack and Pike will take a bait in March; but as they are then very full, and their spawn being also very unfit for food, the gentleman-sportsman will surely then desist from trolling.

The most favourable weather for trolling, is when a smartish breeze blows from the South to West, and the day cloudy or dull; at such times, keep the wind at your back, and the water in front: but if the water and weather be very bright, fish against the wind. From September to the beginning of November, Jack and Pike will take a bait best from ten o'clock till one, and again from three till dusk; but after the nights become very long and cold, the Angler should then prefer the middle and warmest parts of the day; for, at that season of the year, neither Jack or any other Fish will move much at any other time. Thick water is not favourable for trolling, for, during a flood, which causes a coloured water, Jack and Pike keep

very close in shore, among the sags, sedges, or rushes which lay near the banks, or in the still bends of rivers, to keep out of the heavy waters and rapid currents, where they remain stationary until the waters clear and subside. The Angler, who then chooses to try for them, must troll close, even to the touching of those sags and rushes, &c., or he will seldom move a Fish; but immediately the water clears, then comes the Troller's turn, for the Jack and Pike having been, for some time, on short allowance, are then bold, voracious, and fearlessly take the baited hook.

When you have hooked a Jack or Pike, and played him till he is quite exhausted, and you are drawing him ashore, make it a rule to float him on his side, and keep the head a little raised above the surface of the water, that the nose or gills may not hang to, or catch hold of weeds, &c. while you are thus engaged bringing your prize to the shore; for, sometimes, you cannot avoid drawing over or among weeds; and I have seen a Pike touch and get entangled this way; and before it could be disentangled, it recovered from its exhaustion or stupor, and occasioned much trouble and hazard before it could be again subdued.

Note. It is asserted, by some Anglers, that Jack or Pike will not take a bait when the moon shows itself during the day-time; and they declare, they have so frequently and invariably found that to be the case, that, when the moon shines on the water, let the hour of the day be what it may, they cease trolling. I have

nothing to say on the subject, but leave the inquisitive Angler to satisfy himself by observation.

CHAP. X.

Observations on the different ways practised in Fishing for Jack and Pike.—Also, on Trimmers.—Concluding with Remarks on the nature, &c. of Jack and Pike.

HAVING explained the different ways generally practised by Anglers in trolling or fishing for Jack and Pike, I shall now proceed to give an opinion on the merits of each different way, resulting from my own experience, and the practice of many old friends and brothers of the angle; beginning first with the

Gorge-hook.

In Trolling with the baited gorge-hook, I have had the most success, and with it killed the heaviest Fish. This bait shows well in the water, and turns or spins, especially when you are in the act of drawing it up, (at which time Jack or Pike generally take it,) and consequently is very attracting to Jack or Pike. This bait also possesses another advantage over any other, namely, the closeness of the hooks in the bait's mouth, the points only just shewing themselves, which is material in bright water, and also less liable to catch hold

of weeds, or any thing else that might displace the hooks or disfigure the bait: and again, the hooks being so much hid and out of the way, by being within the bait's mouth, and the gimp coming from the tail, there is nothing to check the Jack or Pike when they are changing the bait to pouch; for it is well known, that those Fish generally seize the bait, in the first instance, across its body, afterwards changing its position, and swallow or pouch it head foremost; consequently, while so doing, the gimp and hooks in most other baits are liable to offend, or create fear and suspicion in the Fish, and the bait is then frequently blown or dropped out of its mouth, instead of being pouched. I have known instances where a dozen trimmers have been laid, at a distance of twenty yards apart, each trimmer baited with a choice live-bait, and after remaining many hours in the water, neither of them have been touched; I have then trolled between them with the gorge, and have had runs, and killed my Fish. Some Anglers think, that cutting off all the fins of the bait-fish for the gorge-hook, disfigures it; but Jack or Pike are indifferent about it; and it certainly is the best method, particularly as it keeps the bait from catching or hanging on weeds, and the bait also spins better when the fins are all cut close away; therefore I cut away all the fins, but leave the tail on.

From the reasons above stated, I do not hesitate to say, that I consider trolling with the gorge-hook to be the most sportsman-like, as well as the most killing

way of fishing for Jack or Pike; yet, at a certain season of the year, the Angler will find it more profitable to use a live-bait than a dead; but, to take the whole season for Jack and Pike-fishing, I firmly believe, he who confines himself to trolling with the gorge will kill twice the number or weight of Jack and Pike, than he who, for the whole season, fishes only with a live-bait.*

Live-bait Fishing.

Fishing for Jack with a live-bait, and a cork float on the line, is certainly an enticing way; but I do not consider it so successful as trolling with the gorge-hook; neither have I ever killed such heavy Fish by this method of live-bait fishing as with the gorge-bait; yet I know, from practice, that more Jack and Pike may be killed by angling for them with a live-bait and a floated line, than any other way, except trolling with the gorge-hook; and the little labour or exertion required to take Jack and Pike by this mode of fishing, is, doubtless, the cause of many preferring it, as it allows them frequent opportunities of resting when they

* An instance, in corroboration of this opinion, occurred to two friends of mine in the month of November, 1822, who were Jack-fishing with live and dead-baits, in the river Lea, near Cheshunt. In the afternoon, the Fish were strong on the feed, during which time they bagged near sixty pounds' weight of Jack and Pike, the whole of which they killed with dead-baits, and the gorge-hook; but not a Fish with the live-bait, although they had two lines baited, and in the water all day.

reach a clear, still place, either in rivers or ponds, with the pleasure of observing their float dance about by the live-bait sailing to and fro, which certainly does have the effect of drawing the Jack or Pike to the bait; but they often blow, drop, or throw it out of their mouths again, from the gimp or hook touching them when shifting the bait to pouch it. This frequently occurs when the bait is hooked by the lip, which is my principal reason for preferring the hooks laying on the side, and gimp coming out below the back fin. *(See Fig. 2. Chap. III.)* When the water is very bright, I use a strong No. 6 hook, tied to twisted gut, instead of gimp, and a very small bait, with which I kill many Jack and Perch that would not take a bait fixed to gimp-tackle in very bright or fine water, or in shallows, during the Summer.

The most proper time for live-bait fishing is, when the heavy weeds, rushes, and sedges, are rotten, and daily wasting and being washed away by floods, frosts, &c., which generally commence in November; from which time until April, Jack and Pike will take a live-bait more freely than at any other time of the year.

Snap-Fishing.

Snap-fishing for Jack and Pike is neither so scientific, gentlemanly, or sportsman-like a way of angling, as with the gorge or live-bait; nor does it afford so much amusement or profit; for, when the hook or hooks are baited, the Angler casts in search, draws, raises, and sinks his bait, until he feels a bite; he then strikes with

much violence, and instantly drags or throws his victim, *nolens volens*, on shore, (and then almost wonders how he came there,) which he is enabled to do, because the hooks used for the Snap are of the largest and strongest kind used in fresh-water fishing. But this hurried and unsportsman-like way of taking Fish can only please those who value the fish more than the sport afforded by killing a Jack or Pike with tackle, which gives the Fish a chance of escaping, and excites the Angler's skill and patience, mixed with a certain pleasing anxiety, lest he escape, and the reward of his hopes by killing the fish, which is the true sportsman's delight. Neither has the snap-fisher so good a chance of success, unless he angle in a pond or piece of water, where the Jack or Pike are very numerous, or half starved, and will hazard their lives for almost any thing that comes in the way; but in rivers where they are well fed, worth killing, and rather scarce, the coarse snap-tackle, large hooks, &c. generally alarm them: on the whole, I think it is two to one against the snap, in most rivers; and if there are many weeds in the water, the large hooks of the snap, by standing rank, are continually getting foul, damaging the bait, and causing much trouble and loss of time. Jack are also killed by an artificial bait, called a Devil, which should be about three inches long; they are kept ready fitted at the fishing-tackle shops, and in some sharp waters are very killing.

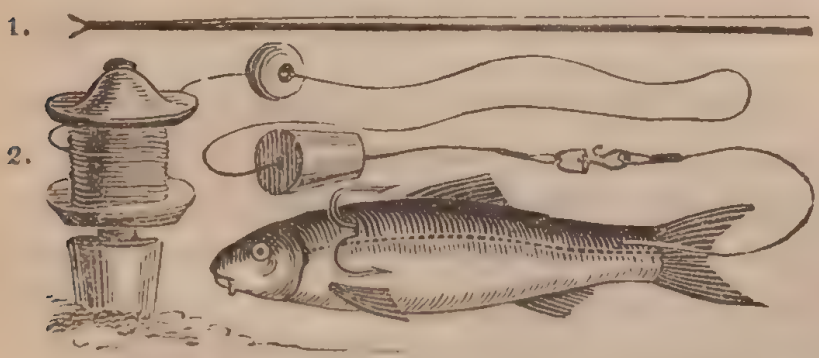
Two-handed, or Cross-Fishing.

In the North of England, two-handed or cross-fishing is practised for Salmon, Trout, and also for Jack and Pike; though this method of fishing is but little practised elsewhere. Indeed, it can hardly be called fair fishing; and, as such, it is generally forbid by the proprietors of private waters, who seldom deny a sportsman a day's angling, under fair restrictions. This two-handed Snap-fishing for Jack and Pike is practised in the following manner:—take about forty or fifty yards of strong cord, sash, or jack line, and fasten each end to poles about seven or eight feet long; and on each pole fasten a large winch that will hold fifty yards of the strongest platted silk trolling-line; in the middle of the strong line (which is fastened to the poles) tie on a small brass or wooden pulley; then draw the trolling line from the winches, and pass it through the pulley; then bait a snap-hook or hooks with a full-sized bait-fish, and fix it to the trolling-line, and all is ready to commence two-handed Snap-fishing. The parties managing the poles, proceed directly opposite each other, on the banks of rivers or other waters, and drop their baited hooks in places where they expect to find; and when they feel a bite, one strikes very smartly, and his companion then lowers or otherways manages his pole, so as to give him any or every assistance while killing and getting the Jack or Pike on shore. When the gorge-hook is used in this way of fishing, it is then proper to have two pulleys fastened

to the thick cord, near the centre of it, at about a yard apart; because, when one Angler feels a run, the other should immediately keep all still while the Fish pouches: this cannot be so well done when both lines pass through one pulley: and the Troller knows, that if Jack or Pike are not well on the feed, they will throw or drop the bait on the least check or alarm; if there be only one pulley, then only one line should be used. In some places, the country people get a strong small rope or clothes line, and tie one or more snap baited hooks to it, and take hold one at each end of the rope, and walk opposite each other, on the banks of small rivers and ponds, letting the baited hooks drag in the water, until they feel a bite; the one strikes and immediately drags the Jack on shore, the other person slacks the line he holds, while his companion is so doing.

Various other ways are practised for taking Jack and Pike, by night lines, trimmers, &c.; but such methods are justly reprobated by the true Angler who exercises his skill and art for amusement more than profit; therefore, I shall say but very little on this part of the subject. The trimmers mostly used in lakes, meers, broads, pools, and large ponds, are taken up from a boat; if the place be not too broad, you may get them with the drag hooks, or with a large stone, fastened to plenty of strong cord, being thrown over the trimmer line: these trimmers are made of strong thin hempen cord, with a hook tied to brass wire (but gimp is better), and wound on a large piece of flat cork, about five or six inches in diameter, with

a groove to admit the line: the hook is baited with a Gudgeon, Roach, or some small Fish; you then draw as much line out as admits the bait to hang about a foot from the bottom. There is a small slit in the cork, that you pass the line in, to prevent it unwinding: as soon as the Jack or Pike seizes the bait, the line loosens, and runs from the groove of the cork free, and allows the Fish to retire to his haunt, and pouch at leisure. These floating trimmers are named, by some, the *man-of-war* trimmers, from the largeness of the cork; and by others, *fox-hounds;* and may be purchased at all the principal fishing-tackle shops. Some use only a wisp of straw or rushes, and tie two or three yards of string to a baited hook, then throw the whole in the water, and often kill with a trimmer so rudely constructed, especially in the broads in the county of Norfolk, trimmers are there called ligurs.



1. Rod to place and take up trimmers and dead bait lines.
2. Bank-runner trimmer, baited with a live bait.

The Bank-Runner, Trimmer, &c.

The bank-runner is mostly used in the day, while the Angler is fishing for Roach, Barbel, &c. These

trimmers are stuck in the bank, the bottom being strong turned wood, sharpened for the purpose, with a winder at top for the line, which should be from sixteen to twenty yards long, made of silk trolling line, thin cord, or platted Dutch twine; but you must have a cork and bullet to the line; (*See the Cut.*) The cork used for a wine-bottle does very well after the edges are pared round the top and bottom; and bait with a live Fish, as described in the Cut, which should swim about a foot or two from the ground, which it will by the aid of the cork. When you use the rod, fig. 1, hold the line with your left hand, and, with your right, pass the forked part under the line just above the bullet: you may then place the baited hook in the water, where you please, by a jerk of the rod, at the same time letting the line go from your left hand.

To take Jack and Pike, with Hook, Bladder, or Bottle.

Jack and Pike are also taken in lakes, and other large pieces of water, by baiting with a full-sized Dace, Gudgeon, or a Roach; nearly half-a-pound weight is best. Use strong snap-hooks, with two lengths of gimp, and two swivels, which must be fastened to about a yard of the stoutest platted silk trolling-line: then tie the line very secure to the neck of a large bladder, and launch it in the water with a brisk wind: if the Fish are on the feed, you will soon perceive the water agitated in the most violent manner; and, after an amusing and desperate struggle, the bladder will

kill the heaviest Pike, provided your hooks and tackle are good. In Ramsey Meer, Huntingdonshire, there is an annual exhibition, called a bottle-race, and often much betting on the event of which bottle kills a Pike first: the baits and hooks are managed in the same manner as with a bladder; the bottle (a wine bottle) is used in place of a bladder; the line is tied round the neck. When several are so prepared, they are ranged in a row, and all launched at a given signal; and much amusement and delight is afforded the spectators, by the Jack and Pike dragging the bottles about, and often two come in contact. If the Fish feed well, which is generally the case, for this extensive piece of water abounds with Jack and very large Pike, some fasten their trimmer lines to large bricks, or heavy pieces of stone, or clods of earth, to prevent them being noticed, and throw them into the water.

Snaring, or Haltering, of Jack and Pike.

In the Spring and Summer, Jack and Pike will frequently lie dozing near the surface of the water, especially in large ditches, connected with rivers and ponds, also among weeds; they are then taken in an unsportsmanlike manner, by making a running noose of wire, gimp, trolling-line, or treble-twisted gut fastened to a strong line and rod, or pole; the noose should be very carefully drawn over the Fish's head beyond the gills, then, with a strong jerk, he is securely caught; lift him out immediately. Fish may be taken, when found lying in a similar manner to that

already described, by putting two or three strong hooks at the bottom of your line, and letting them sink under the Fish; then strike smartly, and you will generally be successful.

Remarks on the Nature, Haunts, Habits, &c. of Jack and Pike.

Beware, ye flirting Gudgeons, Roaches fair,
And all who breathe the lucid crystal of the lakes,
Or lively sport, between the dashing wheels
Of river mills;—beware; the Tyrant comes;
Grim death awaits you in his gaping jaws,
And lurks behind his hungry fangs.

See M'Quin's Descriptions of three hundred Animals.

Jack and Pike have a flattish head; the under jaw is something longer than the upper one, and turns up a little; the mouth is extremely wide, the tongue very large, and studded with teeth, the lower jaw is set round with large crooked canine teeth; the expanse of mouth, jaws and teeth, enables this merciless Fish to hold fast, and quickly destroy the victim that is so unfortunate as to come within its reach. The body of a Jack is long, and cased with very small hard scales, and, when they are in season, it is covered with a mucous or slimy substance; the back and upper part of the sides are of a greenish golden hue, and the belly of an indifferent white colour; the eyes are of a bright yellow, and sunk low in the sockets, but are so placed as to enable the Jack to look upwards, which should teach the Angler not to sink his bait too low in the water.

After Jack and Pike have fully recovered from spawning, they then have many beautiful spots on their bodies, of a bright white and yellowish colour; their tails and fins have also on them numerous dusky spots and waved lines. Jack and Pike, when on the feed, are as bold as they are voracious, attacking all kinds of Fish, except the Tench.

> Pike, fell tyrant of the liquid plain,
> With ravenous waste devours his fellow train;
> Yet, howsoe'er with raging famine pin'd,
> The Tench he spares, a medicinal kind;
> For when by wounds distress'd, or sore disease,
> He courts the salutary Fish for ease;
> Close to his scales the kind physician glides,
> And sweats the healing balsam from his sides.
>
> POPE.

When much distressed for food, they will seize the smaller of their own species, and also ducks, water-rats, mice, frogs, or any other small animal they can meet with: they will often seize a small Fish, which the Angler has hooked, while he is drawing it out of the water, leaping above the surface for that purpose. I have known many instances of their swallowing the leaden plummet that the Angler is taking his depth with; and once, while I was plumbing the depth (preparatory to fishing for Chub in the winter) with a folding plummet, having a No. 8 hook and a gut-line, a Jack of about two pounds immediately pouched my plummet; the hook, hanging over the side of this

folding plummet, got sufficient hold of the Jack, that I held him, and soon killed and landed this hungry intruder.

Perch (the large ones especially) seem but little intimidated by the appearance of Jack or Pike, for they continue to swim about as before those tyrants appeared. The following singular circumstance occurred with my friend Mr. R. Robinson, who laid a trimmer baited with a stone loach, which a Perch, of about half a pound weight, took and gorged; a Pike, then finding the Perch somewhat embarrassed, seized him, and attempted to pouch him; but the dorsal fin of the Perch stuck so fast across the throat of the Pike, that he could not extricate himself; by which means, Mr. R. secured both Perch and Pike. It is, however, different with other Fish, as they immediately swim or dart away with the greatest velocity, and the Eels suddenly sink and bury themselves in the mud, or lay close under thick and heavy beds of weeds.

It is generally supposed, that Jack will increase in weight something more than a pound in a year, for the first four or five years, and during that time, continue to grow in length; but after that period, they grow more in depth or breadth and thickness. Some writers on Natural History affirm that Pike will live two or three hundred years, and grow to the amazing size of a hundred and fifty pounds, or more, and that they are so wonderfully prolific, as to produce more than a hundred and fifty thousand eggs in one roe. Of those circumstances, respecting the age, &c. of Jack and

Pike, I must confess, I know but little; therefore shall say nothing more on the subject, leaving the curious to consult the Natural History of Fishes, &c., during unfavourable weather; but, instead thereof, will inform the Angler where he is likely to find both old and young, large and small Jack and Pike, so that he may avoid much loss of time and fruitless labour, when in search of them.

Jack and Pike are partial to quiet retired places, where the water is rather shallow than deep, forming a bend or bay in rivers and large waters, and also removed from strong currents, especially if those bends or bays abound with their favourite weed, the pickerell, (on which they are said to feed), also the candock or water-lily, and the shore sides are shaded with tall sedgy sags. Among those sedges, Jack and Pike lay (especially during floods, heavy runs of water, and while the water is thick) a foot or two below the surface, with their noses just projecting from the sedges, looking up the stream for what may come within their reach as food; therefore the Angler, when he trolls in thick, heavy water, must try close in-shore.

But when the weather is fine, and the water of a proper colour, Jack and Pike occasionally go some yards from their haunts in search of food, particularly to the sharps, shallows, and parts of waters where the bottom is clean, sandy, or gravelly; because, in such places, Gudgeons, Dace, and other small Fish, delight to resort. In February (if mild for the season) Jack and Pike begin to move from their retired situations,

and from natural feelings, they congregate in those parts of pools, and rivers, canals, lakes, or ponds, where small streams and ditches empty themselves, or run into larger waters. In the month of March they spawn, retiring for that purpose, in pairs, to the stillest part of the waters, and deposit their spawn among and on those weeds which are of the nature of rushes, having thick stems, such as the candock and water-lily, and, in default of which, about the roots or lower parts of bull-rushes or sedges. From March till August or September, Jack and Pike are not in a vigorous state, seeming more inclined to doze and bask in the sun nearly out of water, than feed; for at those times it is not unusual to see numerous small Fish swimming and playing around this dreaded enemy of the finny race for hours, without his disturbing them. At such times, Jack and Pike will refuse the choicest bait the Angler can select; and if it be placed so close as to touch his nose, he will not take it, but generally draws himself a little back from it; and if you persevere in placing or drawing the bait (either live or dead) to him, he will sink or plunge away in anger: in fact, Jack and Pike are among, if not the longest of any Fish, in recovering their health, flesh, and appetite, after the act of procreation; for few of them will take a bait freely, nor are they often fit for the table before September or October. For during the first part of Summer, they remain long, thin, and lanky; the various spots and golden tinge on their sides and back, then lose much of their brightness or brilliancy, and their

heads appear unseemly large, because they have then lost that depth and rotundity of body (especially about the vent-fin) which they possess when in season; for Pike, that weigh ten pounds when in full health and vigour, would not weigh more than seven or eight while out of season or condition; which they certainly are, and so remain (generally speaking) in all rivers, lakes, meers, or ponds, from the month of April, until September or October.—Note. A Jack or Pike will be much firmer, and of better flavour, if they are gutted, and a handful of salt put in its place, and left there for twelve hours, laying the Fish in a dish to drain before it is cooked. Some persons are partial to small Jack, the best way to cook them is, to split them down the back and fry them in egg-batter, and if well dressed, they will be found excellent food: heavy Pike are best roasted.

PART III.

FLY FISHING.

May-Fly.

Palmer.

Brown Moth-Fly.

Ant and Gnat Flies.

White Moth-Fly.

Red Spinner.

CHAP. I.

Artificial-Fly Fishing, and Fly making for Trout, Salmon, &c.

"Silent along the mazy margin stray,
And with the fur-wrought fly delude the prey."

FISHING with an artificial fly is certainly a very pleasant and gentlemanly way of Angling, and is attended with much less labour and trouble than bottom-fishing. The Fly-fisherman has but little to carry, either in bulk or weight; nor has he the dirty work of digging clay, making ground-baits, &c. He may travel for miles with a book of flies in his pocket and a light rod in his hand, and cast in his bait, as he roves on the banks of a river, without soiling his fingers; it is therefore preferred by many to every other way of Angling. Yet Fly-fishing is not without its disadvantages, for there are many kinds of Fish that will not take a fly; whereas, all the different species which the fresh waters produce will take a bait at bottom, at some season of the year; and it is also worthy of notice, that the Angler who fishes at bottom has many months and days in the year when the Fish will so feed; consequently, he has frequent opportunities of enjoying his amusement, when the Fly-fisherman is entirely deprived of the chance of sport by very cold or wet weather, the Winter season, &c. Many good

Jack and Pike are taken at Christmas; but, at that season of the year, neither Trout nor Chub are likely to rise for a fly, however skilfully made or thrown. Fly-fishing certainly partakes more of science than bottom-fishing, and, of course, requires much time, study, and practice, before the Angler can become any thing like an adept at making or casting a fly; indeed, artificial-fly making is somewhat difficult to learn, but more difficult to describe. The young Angler would gain much more information on the subject by attending a Fly-fisherman, while he is casting or making an artificial-fly; if he cannot avail himself of such knowledge, he must persevere, and strictly follow the directions I shall offer to his notice, in both making and casting a fly. There are many excellent Fly-fishermen who never trouble themselves to make a fly, yet kill Trout in every Trout-stream they fish, with flies bought at the London tackle-shops, where the Angler may get a fly made to any pattern, colour, or shape, he chooses; in truth, flies are now so well made at those shops, that it is not worth the Angler's trouble to make them. Note:—The artificial-flies, sold at the fishing-tackle shops, are principally made from the directions given by Bowlker, of Shrewsbury; and, perhaps, have been but little improved during the last century: but, among the modern writers on Fly-fishing, the Angler may consult *Captain Williamson's Angler's Vade Mecum*, and *Bainbridge's Fly-Fisher's Guide*, probably with some advantage.

I should certainly recommend the young Fly-fisher-

man, in the first instance, to purchase his artificial flies, but, after some experience in the art, to make his own; and, to enable him to do so properly, I shall minutely describe the method of making them, and the materials of which they should respectively be formed, as will enable him, at all times, to supply himself, should he prefer making them to buying them at the tackle-shops: the Angler will then be enabled to imitate any fly that may be a killing one, where they are not to be purchased; this sometimes occurs when far from home. In purchasing artificial flies, it would be proper to apply for them at some respectable fishing-tackle shop, that the novice may feel assured he will receive those for which he asks. The following will be proper to select: red and black palmers, red and black hackles, grouse-red and black ant-flies, the yellow May-fly or green-drake, stone-fly; small black gnat-flies, the red-spinner, and white-moth. Having purchased the above assortment of flies, the Angler should make himself well acquainted with their several forms, the number of wings, and every other particular, that he may be able to know every difference between the several kinds, thereby guarding against having flies imposed on him of a species different to what he may think proper to order. The flies above-enumerated are all of established credit; their respective merits, the way and materials of which they are made, will be found under their different names. In many places, certain flies are preferred; the bean or thistle-fly has been considered a secret in some part of Wales, and much valued. There

is a fly used very much at Watford, in Herts, called Harding's-fly, or the Coachman's; the merits of such flies experience will teach how to appreciate. Note:—Make it an invariable rule, to try a red or black-palmer first in the morning and last in the evening, when whipping for Trout; the other part of the day, winged flies. This is following nature, as Fish seek for food by instinct, expecting winged insects in the day-time, and the palmer or caterpillar in the cool and damp of the mornings and evenings.

Concise Directions for making an Artificial Fly.

TAKE some fine silk, of the proper colour, and wax it well with bees' wax; then hold the bend of the hook between the fore-finger and thumb of the left hand, and with the right give the silk two or three turns round the shank, and fasten it; then take a small feather, of the colour you intend the fly should be, strip off some of the fibres towards the quill, and leave a sufficient quantity for the wings, holding the point of the feather between your finger and thumb; turn back most of the remaining fibres, and, laying the point end of the feather upon the hook, give a few more laps round it with your silk, and fasten; then twirl the feather round the hook, till all the fibres are wrapped upon it; which done, fasten and cut off the two ends of the feather; then, with dubbing of the proper colour twisted round the remaining silk, warp from the wings towards the bend of the hook, till the fly is the size required. Before

the young artist tries his skill at dressing or making a fly, (supposing a green-drake,) he should carefully take an artificial one to pieces, and observe how it is formed.

Thus, having learnt how to apply his materials to the hook, the knowledge how to make the May-flies is first requisite to be understood; for these flies are of so much value to the Angler, that every one who wishes to excel in Fly-fishing should learn how to make them as soon as possible. There are several persons in London who manufacture artificial flies for sale; and, among those professed fly-makers some for a gratuity, will instruct the Angler in the whole art and mystery of fly-making. The manufacture of the green-drake, grey-drake, and stone-fly, in particular, should be well understood, as it is sometimes difficult to procure, or preserve the natural ones; and, moreover, a proficiency in the art of making these, will enable any person to make a fly to any pattern, an art highly necessary, for it will often happen that Trout will refuse every fly you may have with you; and the only resource then is, to sit down and make one, resembling, as much as possible, those which you may find flying about the spot.

When artful flies the Angler would prepare,
This task, of all, deserves his utmost care:
Nor verse nor prose can ever teach him well
What masters only know, and practice tell;
Yet thus at large I venture to support,
Nature best followed best secures the sport:

Of flies, the kinds, their seasons, and the breed,
Their shapes, their hue, with nice observance heed;
Which most the Trout admires, and where obtain'd,
Experience will teach, or perchance some friend.

MOSES BROWN.

To make the Artificial Green-Drake, or Yellow May-Fly, and others.

Make the body of seal's fur, or yellow mohair, a little cub fox-down, or hog's wool, or camel's and bear's hair mixed; warp with pale yellow and green silk waxed to imitate the joints of the fly's body under the wings: the wings to be made of a mallard, or wild drake's feather, dyed yellow; to do which put a handful of horse-radish leaves into a pint of water; to which add a piece of alum the size of a small walnut; simmer the whole for some time, and it will then dye feathers, silk, &c. a yellow, of any shade and fast colour;* three whisks for the tail from a sable muff, or the whiskers of a black cat or a horse's beard, or hairs from a dog's tail. When this green-drake is made small, it is then generally termed the yellow may-fly. Another way to make the may-fly: make the wings of the feathers from a mallard's breast, dyed yellow; the body of amber-coloured mohair, thinly put on with a two-forked tail,

* Those Anglers who may wish for further information in the art of dyeing feathers, wool, hair, &c. I should recommend to consult Packer's *Dyer's Guide.*

made as before described, and the legs of a grizzle cock's hackle; hook No. 6.

GREY-DRAKE.

Make the body from a white ostrich's feather, the end of the body, towards the tail, of peacock's herle, warping of ash-colour, with silver twist, and black hackle; wings of a dark-grey feather of a mallard.

STONE-FLY.

To form the body of this fly, take bear's down and a little brown and yellow camlet well mixed, but so placed that the fly may be more yellow on the belly, towards the tail underneath, than in any other part; place two or three hairs of a black cat or dog, beard or whiskers, or the fibres of a dark hackle, or the bristles that grow under the chin of horses on the top of your hook, in the arming, so as to be turned up when you warp on your dubbing, and to stand almost upright, branching one from the other; rib with yellow silk; make the wings large and long, of the dark-grey feather of a mallard.

As the formation of these artificial may-flies will be rendered not only easier, but more perfect, by an intimate acquaintance with the natural ones, I shall here give such a description of them as will, at least, lead the young Angler to a careful observation of them when on his fishing excursions.

NATURAL MAY-FLIES.

Ephemera, vulgate May-fly, or Green-Drake.

This may-fly is bred from the cad-worm, and is found in numbers beside most small gravelly rivers, near the banks where bushes grow and overhang the water, to which places they fly when they change from their chrysalis state; its wings, which are single, stand high on the back like the butterfly. The curious observer may be gratified daily, during fine weather, the latter end of May by seeing this singular insect break through the case of dried weed, or straw rushes, in which it has been incased while in the state of a maggot, and, by the wonderful power of the Creator, become completely transformed into a fly. The body of this fly is a yellow, (some are darker than others) ribbed across with green; the tail consists of three small wisks, quite dark, and turned upwards to the back, like the tail of a drake or mallard: from the green stripes on the body, and its turned-up tail, this May-fly receives the name of green-drake; in some places it is also called the cock-up or tilt-up tail, as is also the grey-drake.

GREY-DRAKE.

The grey-drake, in shape and size, is like the green-drake, but different in colour, being a lighter yellow, and striped with black down its body; the wings are a glossy black, and thin like a cob-web.

Stone-Fly, called the Water-Cricket, or Creeper while in the state or form of a maggot.

The stone-fly escapes from the husk or case before his wings are sufficiently grown, so as to enable him to fly, and creeps to the crevices of stones, in which places they may be found, and from which circumstance the name is derived: they are found in almost all Trout streams, or stony rivers, and are known by the Angler as a killing bait for Trout; therefore many take the trouble of placing stones one on the other, so as to leave a hollow between, that the fly may be sheltered from the wind until his wings are full grown, which always occurs early in May. The body of the stone-fly is long and thick, of a brown colour, ribbed with yellow, and has whisks at the tail, and two small horns on his head: when full grown, the wings are double, and of a dusky dark-brown colour. This fly has several legs, and uses them more than his wings, as you may often find them padding on the top of the water, only moving their legs. The three flies I have just described, namely, the green-drake, the grey-drake, and the stone-fly, are all known by the name of the may-fly. Although the green-drake, the grey-drake, and the stone-fly, are all termed may-flies, yet the young Fly-fisherman should be apprised, that when the may-fly is spoken of among Anglers, they generally mean the green-drake, or, as some call it, the yellow may-fly, from the colour of its wings; and

it certainly is the most general killing may-fly; yet the stone-fly is found to be the best in some few places, more especially about Carshalton, and also in very stony small rivers; these flies are the best, either natural or artificial, that can be used until Midsummer, in most waters. Trout are immoderately fond of the may-flies, and nature has been very bountiful in providing millions of them; from feeding on which, the Trout soon recovers his strength and beauty, and also becomes very fat.

Directions for making a Plain Palmer or Hackle.

First, provide a short length of gut, about fifteen inches long, and a hook No. 7 or 8, some red silk well waxed with red wax, a fine red hackle, and some ostrich feathers: hold the hook by the bend, between the fore-finger and thumb of the left hand, with the shank towards the right hand, and with the point and barb of your hook nearly parallel with the tops of your fingers; and then take the length of silk about the middle, and lay the one half along the inside of the hook towards your left hand, the other to the right; next, take that part of the silk that lies towards your right hand, between the fore-finger and thumb of that hand, and holding that part towards your left tight along the inside of the hook, whip that to the right, three or four times round the shank of the hook, towards the right hand; after which, take the gut, and lay one end of it along the inside of the shank of the hook till it comes near to the bend; then

hold the hook, silk, and gut tight between the fore-finger and thumb of your left hand. and, afterwards, give that part of the silk to your right hand three or four whips more over the hook and gut, till it comes nearly to the end of the shank; make a loop and fasten it tight; then whip it neatly again over silk, gut, and hook, till it comes near to the bend of it; after which, make another loop, and fasten it again; then, if the gut reach farther than the bend, cut it off, and your hook will be whipped on, and the parts of the silk will hang from the bend of it; then wax the longest ends of the silk again, and take three or four strands of an ostrich's feather, and holding them and the hook as in the first position, the feathers to the left hand, and the roots of them in the bend of the hook, with the silk you waxed last, whip them three or four times round; make a loop, and fasten them tight; then turning the strands to the right hand, and twisting them and the silk together, with the fore-finger and thumb of the right hand, wind them round the shank of the hook till you come to the place where you fastened, then make a loop and fasten them again. If the strands should not be long enough to wind as far as it is necessary round the shank, when the silk gets bare, you must twist others on it; after which, take a pair of small-pointed sharp scissors, and cut the palmer's body to an oval form, taking care not to cut away too much of the dubbing. Both ends of the silk being separated at the bend and shank end of the hook, wax them both

again; then take the hackle; hold the small end between the fore-finger and thumb of your left hand, and stroke the fibres of it with your right contrarywise to which they are formed; keep your hold, as in the first position, and place the point of the hackle in its bend, with that side which grows nearest the cock upward, then whip it tight to the hook—in fastening it, avoid tying in the fibres as much as possible: the hackle being fastened, take it by the large end, and keeping the side nearest the cock to the left hand, begin with your right hand to wind it up the shank upon the dubbing, stopping every second turn, and holding what you have wound tight with your left fingers, whilst, with a needle, you pick what fibres may have been taken in; proceed in this manner until you come to the place where you first fastened, and where an end of the silk is, then clip those fibres off the hackle which you hold between your fore-finger and thumb, close to the stem, and hold the stem close to the hook; afterwards, take the silk in your right hand, and whip the stem quite fast to it, then make a loop and fasten it tight. Take a sharp knife, and if that part of the stem next the shank of the hook be as long as the part of the hook which is bare, pare it fine; wax your silk, and bind neatly over the bare part of the hook; then fasten the silk tight, and spread shoe-maker's wax lightly on the last binding; then clip off the remaining silk at the shank and bend of the hook; and, also, any fibres that may stand amiss. Captain Williamson, author of the *Angler's Vade*

Mecum, makes a plain or palmer-hackle in the following manner, which is both an easy and excellent way: First, whipping the hook on for a few laps and lapping in the ends of a long fibre, and of a hackle at the same place; then, lapping down the whole length as far as the shank is straight, and in making the half hitches at bottom a small piece of platting is lapped in; this done carry the fibre round the hook very close, adding a second or more fibres, if requisite, to complete down to the end of the whipping; when it is completed thereto, lap it under the platting, which is then to be carried round from the bottom to the top, leaving a very small interval between each round; when the platting is brought up completely, let the hackle be passed round progressively downwards, so as nearly to fill up the intervals left by the platting; fasten off at the bottom with two half hitches; if the hackle has very long stiff fibres, the palmer will resemble those hairy caterpillars which are found in gardens and fields, on leaves, grass, &c.

CHAP. II.

Directions for making a Golden or Silver Palmer.

The dubbing the same as the palmer, ribbed with gold or silver twist, with a red hackle over all. When you whip the end of the hackle to the bend of the hook, you must do the same to the gold or silver

twist, first winding either of them on the dubbing, observing that they lie flat on it, and then fasten off; then proceed, as before directed, with the hackle. Some wind the hackle on the dubbing first, and rib the body afterwards.

Those hackles, or palmers, will kill Trout in every month during the whole year, in mornings and evenings that are fit for fly-fishing, and in every water where I have known them used.

Those who wish to try a larger palmer than what I have described, have only to increase the dubbing, &c. on a No. 6 hook; but the smaller the hook is, the neater will the fly look, and the greater will be your sport. To fish fine and far off is the *ne plus ultra* of fly-fishing.

How to make a Dub-Fly.

Another method of making an artificial fly is as follows, which Sir John Hawkins, in his notes on Charles Cotton, considers superior to any other; and, as many Anglers continue to make their fly by that direction, I have been induced to insert it, being of opinion, that it is not material by which direction the young artist practises making a fly; for when he becomes so much master of the art as to make a fly, he will soon be able to judge of the merits of any written or verbal description relative to artificial fly-making. Hold the hook between the fore-finger and thumb of the left-hand, with the back of the shank upwards, and the point towards your finger's ends; then take a

strong silk, of the colour of the fly you intend to make, wax it well, with wax of the same colour, (you should have wax of all colours with you) and draw it betwixt your finger and thumb to the head of the shank, and whip it twice or thrice about the bare hook, which is done both to prevent slipping and also to prevent the shank of the hook cutting the fibres of your hair or gut, which sometimes it otherwise will do; then take your line and draw it betwixt your finger and thumb, holding the hook so as only to suffer it to pass by, until you have the knot of your hair or gut almost to the middle of the shank of the hook on the inside; then whip your silk twice or thrice about both hook and line, as hard as the strength of the silk will permit, which being done, strip the feathers for the wings of a proportionable bigness for the size of the fly, placing that side downwards, which grew uppermost before, upon the back of the hook, leaving so much as only to serve for the length of the wings of the point of the plume, lying reversed from the end of the shank upwards: then whip your silk twice or thrice about the root end of the feather, hook, and hair or gut; which being done, clip off the root end of the feather close by the arming; and then whip the silk firmly round the hook, and hair or gut, until you come to the bend of the hook, but no further; which being done, cut away the hair or gut, and fasten it, and take off the dubbing, which is to make the body of your fly as much as you think proper; and holding it lightly with the hook, betwixt the finger and thumb

of your left hand, take your silk with the right, and twisting it betwixt the finger and thumb of that hand, the dubbing will spin itself about the silk; which, when it has so done, whip it about the armed hook, backward, until you come to the setting on the wings; and then take the feather for the wings, and divide it equally in two parts, and turn them back towards the bend, the one on the one side, and the other on the other, of the shank, holding them fast in that posture, betwixt the fore-finger and thumb of your left hand; which done, wrap them down so as to stand slopingly towards the bend of the hook, and warped up to the ends of the shanks. Hold the fly fast between the finger and thumb of your left hand, and take the silk betwixt the finger and thumb of your right hand, and, where the warping ends, pinch or nip with the thumb-nail against your finger, and strip away the remainder of the dubbing from the silk; and then, with the bare silk, whip it once or twice about, to make the wings stand in due order, then fasten, and cut it off: after which, with the point of a needle, raise up the dubbing gently from the warp; twitch off the superfluous hairs of your dubbing; leave the wings of an equal length, or else your fly will never swim true. The Angler will perceive, by this description of making an artificial fly, he has ten rules to observe: first, how to hold the hook and line; secondly and thirdly, how to whip around the bare hook, and join hook and line; fourthly, how to put on the wings; fifthly, how to twirl and lap on the dubbing; sixthly, how to work

it up towards the head: seventhly, how to part the wings; eighthly, how to nip off the superfluous dubbing; ninthly, how to fasten; tenthly, how to trim and adjust the fly for use. And note, those flies whose bodies are without wings, are termed palmers; if with wings, palmer-flies; those whose bodies are made chiefly of wool or mohair, are called dub-flies; if made principally of feathers, they are then named hackle-flies. The feelers or horns of artificial flies may be made with the fine fibres of feathers.

Small flies are most proper for clear shallow water, during a bright sky; and the larger sort for dark weather, and thicker or deeper waters.

Materials for making Artificial Flies.

Get seals', moles', squirrels', and water-rats' furs; also mohairs,—black, blue, and purple; also, white and violet; camlets, of every hue and colour; and fur from the neck and ears of hares; hogs' down, and bears' hair; also, hackle-feathers (hackles are long tender feathers, which hang from the head of a cock down his neck); get them of the following colours, but not too large: red, dun, yellowish, white, and perfect black. Feathers to form the wings, &c. of flies, are got from the mallard and partridge, especially those red ones in the tail; feathers from a cock-pheasant's breast and tail; the wings of the blackbird, the brown-hen, the starling, the jay, the land-rail, the thrush, the fieldfare, the swallow, and the water-coot; the feathers from the crown of a plover,

green and copper-coloured; peacock's and black-ostrich's herle and feathers from the heron's neck and wings. In most instances, where the mallard's feather is directed to be used, that from the starling's wing is generally preferred. You must also be provided with marking-silk, fine, strong, and of all colours; floss silk, gold and silver flatted wire or twist, a sharp knife, hooks of all sizes, shoe-maker's wax, a large needle, to raise your dubbing when flattened, and a pair of sharp-pointed scissors. A little portable vice is necessary to fix on the table, to which you may occasionally fasten your hook while dressing a fly.

Be particular in imitating the belly of the fly, as that part is most in the fish's sight, and make your wings always of an equal length, to insure your fly to swim true.

Note.—When you put or whip on a hackle, place it so that the upper side of the feather may be next the head, because it is always the brightest; and also that sheep stare and starling means the same thing.

Most of those materials for fly-making may be purchased at the principal fishing-tackle shops in London.

The articles for making artificial flies are prettily described by GAY, in his Poem on [Rural Sports, as follows:

> To frame the little animal, provide
> All the gay hues that wait on female pride:
> Let nature guide thee. Sometimes, golden wire
> The shining bellies of the fly require.

The peacock's plumes thy tackle must not fail,
Nor the dear purchase of the sable's tail;
Each gaudy bird some slender tribute brings,
And lends the growing insect proper wings:
Silks, of all colours, must their aid impart,
And every fur promote the fisher's art.
So the gay lady, with expensive care,
Borrows the pride of land, of sea, of air—
Furs, pearls, and plumes the glittering thing displays,
Dazzles our eyes, and easy hearts betrays.

CHAP. III.

A List of Palmers, or Hackle Flies, with and without Wings, for Fly-fishing in every Month during the Season, beginning with April.

Many Anglers object to the palmer being termed a fly, because a palmer, in its natural state, is first a worm or caterpillar, some of them being covered with a rough woolly substance, from which they are called wool-beds, in some places; others have a number of legs, and from their continual rambling over branches, leaves of trees, cabbages, &c. they receive the general name of palmers or pilgrims; they are of various colours, some red, some black, and others of variegated colours; those found in gardens, about the leaves of bushes and vegetables, are, generally, supposed to be

bred from the eggs of variegated butterflies; those that are green, from the white or yellow butterfly; those beautifully spotted, and found on willow trees, are bred from eggs deposited by large moths. Artificial flies are called dub-flies, when the body is principally made of wool or mohair; when chiefly made of feathers, they are called hackle flies. If the body is like a palmer, to which is added wings, then it is properly called a palmer-fly.

There are upwards of a hundred different kinds of flies made for fly-fishing; a selection of which I shall describe, suitable for every month during the season; and which may be purchased at a small expense at the tackle shops, should the Angler decline making them himself.

Some Anglers fish with a fly in Winter, but little sport is ever met with before April, (and if Fish are killed, they are not fit for the table,) or much later than Michaelmas, unless the weather is unusually mild. I shall, however, in the succeeding Chapter, give a list of artificial flies for the Winter months, with directions how to make them.

April.—The cow-dung fly may be used, from the first of this month, and is a killing fly to the end. The brown or dun-drake is a good fly in the middle of the day, particularly if the weather prove gloomy. The horse-fly will also take Fish during the whole of April, but best late in the evening.

May.—The stone-fly may be used all this month with much success, but more particularly in the morn-

ings. The yellow May-fly, commonly called the green-drake, is a killing fly, especially in the evenings, during the whole of this month, and part of June. The black caterpillar-fly is a good fly, and so is the black-thorn-fly this month in small rivers and Trout streams; it kills best in those days that succeed very hot mornings. The fly, called the camlet, may be used with success all the day, until the middle of June, for small Fish.

JUNE.—The lady-fly is now a good one, particularly when the water begins to brighten after a flood. The black gnat-fly is killing in the evening, especially if the weather has been warm and showery during the day. The blue gnat is only used when the water is very fine and low. The red-spinner is an excellent fly, but most killing when the water is dark, and late in the evening.

JULY.—The orange-fly is an excellent bait, particularly if this month prove close, hot, and gloomy. The large red ant-fly is killing for some hours in the middle of the day. The badger-fly is good in the early part of this month, and in the coolest days.

AUGUST.—The small red and black ant-flies are good killers, for three or four hours in the afternoon, and sometimes till sun-set, if it be occasionally obscured. The hazel-fly, by some called the Welshman's button, or button-fly, is valuable all this month to dap with. The small fly, called the light-blue-fly, is known to most fly-fishers to be a killing bait from morning till afternoon, if the weather be at all favourable.

SEPTEMBER.—The willow-fly is most to be depended

on this month, and for the remainder of the season; any of those noticed for July or August may also be used occasionally. All the flies I have enumerated are for killing Trout; but you may also take Chub and Dace with them, and, perchance, a Salmon; Grayling will generally take the same flies as Trout all the season. For making these flies, mohair of various colours is used; also seal's wool, bear's and camel's hair, sheep's wool, badger's hair, hog's down, camlets of all colours, the fur of hairs, squirrels, and foxes, feathers from the neck of the game-cock, called hackles; likewise, feathers from the peacock, mallard, the domestic hen, &c.

I shall take the liberty of closing this part of my subject with Thomson's just and beautiful description of the cunning of an old Trout:—

> ——— Should you lure
> From his dark haunt, beneath the tangled roots
> Of pendant trees, the monarch of the brook,
> Behoves you then to ply your finest art:
> Long time he, following, cautious scans the fly,
> And oft attempts to seize it, but as oft
> The dimpled water speaks his jealous fear:
> At last, while haply o'er the shaded sun
> Passes a cloud, he desperate takes the bait
> With sullen plunge; at once he darts along,
> Deep struck, and runs out all the lengthen'd line,
> Then seeks the farthest ooze, the sheltering weed,
> The cavern'd bank, his old secure abode,
> And flies aloft, and flounces round the pool,
> Indignant of the guile.

CHAP. IV.

List of Artificial Flies, and the way to make them: to kill from Christmas till Michaelmas.

Red Fly.

This fly is much used in Wales and Herefordshire, but better known there by the name of the *Coch-a-bondde;* it is made of a drake's feather, and the body of a red hackle, and the red part of squirrel's fur; it has four wings lying flat on its back: it may be varied by a black cock's hackle and silver twist. This bait is taken during February, and will kill till June, from nine or ten o'clock in the morning till three in the afternoon.

Green Peacock-Hackle.

This fly is made of the greenish herle of a peacock; warping green silk, and a black hackle over all: this fly is taken from eight till eleven during March, as is the

Ash-coloured Dun.

Dub with the roots of a fox cub's tail; warp with pale yellow silk; wings of the pale part of a starling's feather. This fly, which is also called the violet-dun, and blue-dun, is found on most rivers: it varies much in its colours, according to the season of the year. In March and September it is called the violet-dun, for it has often that hue; in April, it assumes a pale ash-

colour; in May, a beautiful lemon, both body and wings; in June and July, it is a blue black; from this time it gradually becomes a violet-dun till the month of September.

Pearl, or Heron-Dun.

This fly is taken both before and after noon, during April; dub the ash-coloured herle of a heron; warp with ash-coloured silk; wings from the short feathers of a heron or coot's wing, of an ash-colour.

The Spider-Fly

appears about the middle of April, if the season be forward, and is a good fly all the remainder of the month: the wings are made of woodcock's feathers, from under the wing; the body; of lead-coloured silk, with a black cock's hackle wrapped twice or thrice round; the body is made in the shape of an ant-fly. In warm, sunny weather, particularly towards the end of April, this fly is found in clusters, on beds of gravel, by the sides of rivers.

The Silver-Twist-Hackle

is a good bait from about nine till eleven in the month of May, especially if the weather is showery; dub with the herle of an ostrich's feather, and warp dark-green silk and silver twist, and black cock's hackle over all.

The Oak, Ash, Woodcock, Hawthorn, or Cannon-Fly, are one and the same Fly.

This is the fly which is so much seen during the months of April, May, and June, on the trunks of oak, ash, and willow trees, and on the thorn-bushes near the water side; and also about piles, rails, and bridges. It is found always with the head pointing downwards; it is a good fly, but difficult to imitate, from its numerous mixed colours; it seldom drops on the water; from which it is generally believed that it does not come from a cadis, but is bred in the oak apple; its wings are large, and lie flat on the back, like the blue-bottle-fly; the head is large and of an ash-colour; the upper part of the body greyish, with a little light-blue, green, and bright brown, mixed; the tail-part greenish, with an orange mixture. No. 10 hook is large enough to make this fly on; the mottled brown feather of a partridge makes the best wings. Two of these flies, when alive, put on a No. 8 hook are a good bait to use when dapping for Trout in May.

Huzzard.

This fly is larger than the green-drake; the body and wings are of a fine lemon-colour; it has four wings lying close to its back: few rivers produce those flies; but where they do, they show themselves at the latter end of April, and the Trout will rise for them very freely; this is supposed to be a true water-fly, and bred from a large cadis. Dub with

lemon-coloured mohair, or yellow ostrich's feather; warp with yellow gold twist, and yellow hackle over all; wings of a pale mallard's feather, yellow or lemon-colour; the wings must be large, longer than the body, and made to lie flat on the back. This is a killing fly on a blustering or windy day, until the May-fly appears.

The Orle-Fly

may be seen in June playing on the water, and is a good killing fly from ten or eleven o'clock till four in very warm weather, all the month, especially after the May-fly is gone; it has four wings lying close to the back, which should be made of a dark grizzled cock's hackle; the body, of a peacock's herle with dark-red silk.

The Pismire-Fly

is good during July and August, for Trout and Chub; body of a calf's hair twisted on pale yellow silk—the silk to be visible; wings, of a mallard's feather.

Middling Brown-Fly.

The body of a cock-pheasant's tail, a peacock's herle to be twisted with it, and warp with ruddy silk; wings, the light part of a starling's feather, and to be made longer than the body.

The Fætid Light-Brown-Fly

is a good killer in the morning, during September,

especially for Chub in the River Lea: the body, of seal's fur of the natural colour; wings, of ruddy-brown, long and arge; warp with ruddy silk.

CHAP. V.

Natural Fly-fishing, Dapping and Whipping for Trout, &c.

Mark well the various seasons of the year,
How the succeeding insect-race appear.

NATURAL fly-fishing is generally termed dibbing, or dapping, and is practised with a stoutish rod, having a light stiff top, running tackle, strong gut or hair line, and No. 7 or 8 hook, for Trout and Chub. When dapping with a May-fly, put two or three on the hook together, which should be carried through the thick part of the fly's body under the wings, with their heads standing different ways, and pass your hook through them under the wings, about the middle of the insect's body, and take care that your fingers are always dry when baiting, or you will soon kill or spoil the bait. Bait the same way with the black ant-fly in June; in July, use the wasp-fly; in August, the hazel or button-fly; in September, the badger-fly; in March and April, the thorn-fly, yellow, dun and stone-flies. The stone-fly, when in the state of a maggot, is called the water-cricket, or creeper, and

is to be found in most small stony rivers or Trout streams in April, lying under hollow stones. In those waters where this cricket is found, it will prove an excellent bait the latter end of April; put two or three on a No. 9 hook, and use it as a tripping bait in the middle of the stream. The cricket is a good bait to dap with, about noon in the said month, and also to sink and draw with.

In this mode of fishing, it is absolutely necessary that you kneel down or stand behind a tree, bush, high weeds, or something to hide your person, or the fish will not rise at your fly or bait. When such a cover can be met with on a stream, this is a killing way of angling, particularly late in the evening. You must draw out as much line as will just let your baited hook reach the surface of the water; then, with the top of your rod a little raised, keep the bait in motion just over and upon the surface of the water, by gently raising and lowering the top part of the rod, and drawing it to and fro; and if you see several fish, cautiously guide your bait to the largest; play it a little, an inch or two above the water, by gently shaking the rod; then let it drop just before the fish. When a fish takes your bait, after a moment, strike smartly, and, if not too large to endanger breaking, lift him out immediately; for, by playing them while dapping, you are very like to scare away the others by exposing yourself to their sight; but if the wind is brisk, and you stand sufficiently high on a bank or bridge, then you should use a long rod, with a finer top and line, and let

several yards of line out, or as far as you can see to play the bait. With such a long rod and line, and a breeze at his back, the Angler may play his bait on the top of the water in streams where the water is nearly level with the bank, with success, because he may keep far from the water, the wind carrying his bait to where he wishes, and yet see a rise or bite.

Baits for Chub, &c.

The best bait in June, July, and August, for Chub, is the humble-bee, during the day, and late in the evening, a large white moth, bred in willow trees, it is called the Owl-Fly, from its resembling an owl in the face and head. Artificial moths, bees, butterflies, cockchafers, grasshoppers, &c. may be purchased at the tackle-shops. I have had much success (particularly in the river Lea) in whipping with a humble-bee, both with the natural and artificial; this is my usual bait, till towards dusk, for Chub, then I use a small black fly, which will also kill Dace. The humble, or large wild humble-bee, is found on flowers and blossoms, in gardens, and on hedges, also in bean and clover fields, from April to Michaelmas.—Note. When you bait with a live bee, it is necessary first to extract its sting, which is easily done in the following manner: hold the sides of the head and shoulders of the bee between the thumb and fore-finger of your right hand, and with the thumb and finger of the left squeeze the tail-end of the bee until it shoots out its sting; then lift your right hand, and with your

Dipping or Dapping for Chub.

nails, or a small pair of pliers, draw away the sting with as little violence as may be, and the bee will remain nearly as lively as before the operation; but if the bee is klilled immediately it is caught, it is equally as good a bait. They will also take the cockchafer or May-bug, (but before you put this insect on the hook, take away its upper horny wings,) grasshoppers, the fly called Father or Harry long-legs,* and all kinds of moths, and small butterflies; also large blue flies, bees, and wasps, generally preferring the largest: put two grasshoppers, or father-long-legs, on a No. 7 hook at a time, the same way as directed for Trout. These baits are readily procured by persons residing in the country, and easily kept alive, in a gentle box, with some green leaves. I prefer the live-bait, and seldom use any other in rivers. You may always expect to find Chub where willow, alder, and pollard trees grow, under which they lie in the evening, waiting for any unlucky moth which may chance to settle on the water. Chub may be taken all dark nights while the moths are on the wing, by dapping with them. You must have a

* This fly has a long thin body, six long legs, and two short wings: the whole appearance is more like a grasshopper than any other winged insect; in colour, it is a light brown or dun; it is found in all meadows, flitting about, especially towards evening, in the months of August and September, and it is a killing bait at that season, both for Chub and Trout: put two on the hook, one to run up and cover the shank, the other to cover the point and bend.

dark lantern, and let one side be open, to throw the light where you play the moth, and the Chub will come to it.—Note. When dapping with an artificial bee, I put a live fly (of any sort I can catch) on the point of the hook, which, by its fluttering, makes the whole appear alive, which entices the fish to seize it; for you ought to know, that dapping with a live bait is more killing than with an artificial one.

For Dace,

the best bait is the common house-fly; you may put two on a No. 10 hook. These flies should be kept in a bottle. Dace are caught of the largest size by dapping, concealing yourself as for Trout and Chub. Whipping for Dace frequently will tend much to improve the Fly-fisherman. The best artificial flies are the black-ant and gnat-flies on a No. 10 hook; the time, the last three hours before it is dark; you may use two or three hooks at a time, tied on about three inches of hair or fine gut, and fastened on the line, about fourteen inches apart. At Thames Ditton, the Angler may get good sport, whipping for Dace and Chub.—*See Ditton.*

For Bleak,

one common flesh or house-fly on a No. 11 or 12 hook. Dace and Bleak are also caught by whipping with an artificial fly; sometimes your sport will be increased by putting a gentle on the tip of the hook, when whipping for Dace with an artificial fly.

Note.—Some Anglers, when whipping for Chub and Dace in the same stream, confine themselves to the red-spinner, the gnat-fly, and a fly of a dusky or dun-colour, all on No. 9 hooks, making it a rule to use the darkest fly last. In the river Lea, where few Trout are met with, but which abounds with fine Chub and Dace together, on the same sharps and shallows, those flies will be found to answer well.

CHAP. VI.

Rods and Lines.

In respect to fly-rods, I believe the London tackle-makers can furnish as good as any that are made for sale; though I know some Gentlemen are partial to those manufactured in the North and West parts of England. I have purchased rods at Exeter for fishing in the river Ex, the Tamar, and other Trout streams in Devonshire, in compliance with the request of some friends who reside in those parts; but I never experienced any advantage in using them over what I carried with me from the metropolis.

Fly-rods are made of bamboo, cane, hickery, hazel, &c. from fifteen to eighteen feet long; the common hazel rod may be used by the young Angler, during his noviciate, to practise throwing a fly on land, in a field, or any other convenient place, which practice I

should recommend before he casts his bait on the water. While so practising, it is better to break away the point and barb of the hook, to prevent its laying hold of grass, weeds, or any thing that may be in the way, which would either break the line, or prevent the fly being thrown with any precision.

Lines

are manufactured of hair, &c., wove, spun, twisted, mixed, and platted, of various lengths and strengths, purposely for fly-fishing; some exceedingly fine and long, tapering gradually to the end; and some, after ten yards, again taper, and to almost any length; a line should not be less than thirty yards. A yard or two of fine gut, to which the hooks are fastened, is added to the line, and called the bottom. To the end of this bottom is fastened the fly; and sometimes, at certain distances, (above) two more; in which case the fly at the bottom is termed the stretcher, the others droppers. The learner should by no means attempt to fish with more than one fly on at a time. When fly-fishing, use as light a winch as you can, but always prefer the multiplying one.

Whipping, Casting, or Throwing the Line and Bait.

With pliant rod, upon the pebbled brook,
Learn skilfully to cast the feathered hook.

In casting or throwing a fly, while yet a novice, observe the following rules:—having fixed the winch on the butt of your rod, draw the line through all the rings

of the rod to the top; and then again, as much more as will reach within a yard of your butt-end from the top; the line will then, of course, be nearly as long as the rod, which will be quite as much as is necessary for a learner to throw; indeed, when you have attained the art of throwing a fly thirty yards, to any given spot, you may use line *ad libitum*. Having fastened your bottom to the line, hold the hook by the bend in the left hand, between your thumb and finger; the rod in the right hand, pointing to the left; bring the top of the rod gently round to the right, making a sweep over your right shoulder, casting forward the fly, which you let go the moment you are in the act of throwing; practise this, with a moderate wind at your back, either on land or water, till you have gained the art. Some prefer the following method of casting a fly:—raise your arm, and forming nearly a circle round your head from the left shoulder, by waving the rod, cast the line from you before you return your arm from the head; then draw the fly lightly and gently towards the shore; have a quick and attentive eye to your bait; for, if a Fish rises at it, and you omit that moment striking, (a very slight movement of the wrist is sufficient to hook the Fish,) the Fish is lost, for they immediately discover the fraud, and throw the bait from their mouth. Thus continue to cast in your line in search, and fish every yard of water likely to afford sport, and never despair of success; for sometimes it so happens, that after many fruitless hours spent,

without a Fish ever rising at your fly, you will fill your bag or basket during the last hour.

The lighter your fly and line descends on the water, the greater the chance of a bite; for thereon depends much of the advantage the experienced Angler has over the novice, and which is only to be acquired by practice, and love of the art. Never use more than one hook on your line at a time till you feel fully confident you can throw your line with one to any given distance or place: when you commence fishing any water, endeavour to keep the wind at your back, as it enables you to stand farther out of the Fish's sight; and you have the additional advantage of fishing both sides of the stream, if not very broad. In small streams, where the middle is shallow, you will always find a rippling on the surface, in the shallow part. When you cast in your bait, always take care to throw it on the opposite side, and draw it slowly to the rippling, letting it float down some distance; and if the Fish like your fly, they will certainly take it; or, if you see a Fish rise in any part of the water you are fishing in, immediately throw your bait just above it, draw the fly gently over the spot where the Fish rose, and, if done quickly and neatly, you will generally take the Fish.

"Upon the curling surface let it glide,
With nat'ral motion from your hand supply'd;
Against the stream now gently let it play,
Now in the rapid eddy float away."

Having given a select list of artificial flies, and also enumerated several natural ones, accompanied with observations on their respective qualities and merits, how to cast or throw a fly, &c.; I shall finally take leave of the subject of fly-fishing, by recommending the young Angler, during his noviciate, to feel confident in pursuing the rules which I have laid down for his practice, and in the use of flies I have selected; and not to be easily put off his purpose by any person who may say that such a fly is unfit for this or that water, as some people are apt to speak hastily, from want of experience, or perhaps from local prejudice; for it will frequently happen that the fly which is the least praised will be found the most killing bait; therefore learn to cast your fly skilfully, and expect sport in every stream you cast a bait in. Aided by hope and patience, and a favourable breeze, you will seldom fail taking a dish of Fish; unless, while the May-fly is on, there should be very heavy rains; if so, the flies are then beat down into the water, and the Trout glut themselves therewith, and will not take a bait for several days afterwards, notwithstanding

> All arts and shapes the wily Angler tries,
> To cloak his fraud, and tempt the finny prize.

APPENDIX.

Gentles and Worms.

GENTLES, or maggots, may be bred from any animal substance, either fish, flesh, or fowl, (those from fish are least worthy) by exposing it to flies to blow on during the Spring and Summer. (I have found flies in Winter, among ivy, in walls that are fronting the South; and, on a warm day, have procured them; by which means, I have had flesh blown by flies, and bred gentles in every month during Winter). After they are of a full size, put them in a vessel, with some house-sand; some use bran, but, from its heating quality, the gentles sooner turn, as Anglers term it, that is, become a chrysalis, in which state they are of little or no use. In London, it is not worth the trouble of breeding gentles, for as many as will serve a day's fishing may be purchased at any of the tackle-shops for a few pence. The least troublesome method I am acquainted with, to keep gentles during the Winter, is to get some full-grown ones, as late in the season as possible, and put

them with fresh mould, and half-dried cow-dung, into a vessel two or three feet in depth, which vessel must be kept in a cool cellar or out-house, occasionally sprinkling a little water over them; by adopting this plan, I am seldom without gentles in February, March, and April, in which months they are a valuable bait. When you use any at this season of the year, (during the Spring) take only as many as you are likely to want, and keep them cool and close, or they will soon turn to a chrysalis, if exposed to the air; therefore, close immediately up the place you take them from: for want of attending to this caution, many lose their preserved stock in a few days.

In the Summer season, when on a fishing excursion from home, I take a quantity of gentles, rather green, with me, and daily give them a small piece of fresh flesh or liver, or a small fish; the small gentles then increase in size, and keep up my stock of a proper size.

When you go out for a day's angling with gentles, put them in sand or earth, rather damp; for, if put in a box with bran, they may turn brown.—Note. Carp, Tench, Barbel, and Chub, prefer gentles that are somewhat green; they are then of a higher flavour and scent, which is very enticing to most Fish.

Anglers who live in the country may, if they choose, breed and preserve gentles all the year in the following manner: get the whole, or part of a bullock's liver, in October, or the heads of sheep, with part of the wool on; cut gashes in them, and let them be well blown by the flies. When the fly-blows are become

full-grown gentles, put them, and the remains of the liver, or heads, into a tight cask or tub, having first put into the tub or cask about a peck of fresh mould from the fields; to which add half the quantity of half-dried cow-dung, and then put the same quantity of mould and dung over them; keep them in a cool place, and when the mould, &c., at the top, becomes dry, sprinkle a little water over it. Using liver or heads, I think less disagreeable than having a dead animal blown on by flies; but those who prefer a rabbit or hare, or cat or dog, have only to follow the directions given above, and they will have gentles at all times. Those who may object to keep the gentles in the house may preserve them in the garden, by putting the liver, or other substance, with the gentles, mould, or dung, in a hole about three feet deep; but note, this hole must be plastered round and at bottom with strong clay, or the gentles will penetrate into the earth, to a great distance. I find those bred from rabbits, hares, or heads, less likely to burrow in the earth, because the skin and wool keeps longer moist, and also affords them food. When you open the store do it carefully, for when the cool Spring air reaches the gentles, they quickly become a chrysalis. Horse-dung is too hot for gentles, but cow-dung nourishes them, as will hogs'-dung also, but in a less degree.

The best way to keep gentles, in the Summer, is to put them in a salmon kit, (which may be bought of the people who sell pickled salmon,) with some house-sand, and sprinkle daily a handful of dampish sand

over them, or a very little water, and they will keep from changing to a chrysalis much longer than if kept in a box or bag; for the kit being very broad at the bottom, enables the gentles to move about and keep themselves cool: but when they are laid on each other, in heaps, in a box or bag, they soon become heated, and consequently soon change to the chrysalis state. As gentles are so valuable a bait, the Angler should not object taking a little trouble to keep them. I have tried many ways, and the above directions are the result of my experience.

Worms.

Cleanse them from filth, to give a tempting gloss;
Cherish the sullied reptile with damp moss;
Amid the verdant bed they twine, they toil,
And from their bodies wipe their native soil.

GAY.

Worms are a very useful and general bait for Fish; I shall therefore carefully describe those which are most fit for the Angler's purpose, consisting of six different kinds, namely:—the lob, the marsh, the brandling, the red, the blood, and the tag-tail worm; there are small worms found about the roots of dock-weeds, cabbages, turnips, potatoes, &c., but they are much inferior to either blood or red-worms, and, consequently, but little used.

Lob-Worms, large and small;

By some called the Dew or Garden worm, by others, the Twatchell, or Squirrel-tail.

These worms, which are the largest used in angling, are generally found in gardens, and may be gathered in great numbers in a damp evening, during the Spring and Summer, when they come out of the ground, or by digging for them where much manure has been laid; they may also be got by laying straw on the ground and pouring water over it; they then soon come near the surface; they may also be forced out of the ground by pouring a strong mixture of salt and water on it, or by forcing a dung fork or spade in the ground, and shaking and loosening the earth therewith. The lob is a good bait for Trout, Barbel, Eels, and Perch, particularly for night-lines, during the early part of the Summer.—Note. The largest lob-worms are of a dirty yellow whitish colour; the smaller, a brownish red with a flat tail something like a squirrel; always prefer the large lob.

Marsh-Worms, or Blue Heads,

are very common, particularly in marsh lands, and may be found under every lump of cow-dung in the fields or commons, or dug out of gardens, fields, or dunghills; in fact, wherever you find earth you may find marsh-worms, especially in the spring and in marsh-earthy-mould: in colour, they are of a dark brown, with a blueish gloss, of a fleshy substance, or

fat; and when well scoured, they lose the earth that is withinside them, and its place is filled with a sort of white fat; they are an excellent bait for Trout, Perch, and most large fish. The poor people who supply the London tackle-shops with worms get a great number of marsh-worms on Kennington Common in the night, using a candle and lantern to see them. This method is practised in Spring and Summer, particularly after warm rain has fallen in the evenings.

Brandlings

are found in great numbers in dunghills, particularly in those which have lain some time, and become very rotten; they are used for Carp, Perch, &c. This worm is striped with red and yellow across the whole body, Brandlings are more used by provincial than by the London Anglers; they should be kept several days in moss, to scour out the bitter pungent mixture with which they abound.

Red Worms.

Some red worms are found in old dunghills, and they also breed among the bark after it has been used by Tanners and thrown out in heaps; but the principal places where they are found, are the banks of the great common sewers, near the metropolis; from which places the tackle-shops are chiefly supplied; as those banks close to the water breed lob, marsh, brandling, and red worms in immense numbers. Several poor people get part of their living by procuring these worms,

which they sell to the London tackle-shops, at per hundred. The red-worm, when well scoured, is of a fine bright red colour, with a knot or belt in the middle; it is the best and most killing worm for Carp, Tench, Barbel, Chub, Dace, Perch, Gudgeons, Eels, Flounders, Bream, &c. Too much cannot be said in praise of well-scoured red worms; two on a hook are very enticing to Perch, Barbel, Carp, Chub, Tench, &c. Indeed, hardly any fish will refuse them, especially during the Spring, Autumn, and Winter; in Summer, you may use them in the evenings of wet days, because at such times worms move not so in dry hot weather, and the Fish then expect them on the banks, from which they frequently drop into the water.

Blood Worms.

This worm, or rather maggot, for it seems to be covered with a case or chrysalis, and at last becomes a gnat-fly, is found at the bottom of shallow ponds, in cow-layers, or yards, and is bred from the excrements of cows and other horned cattle; by gathering the earth, sand, and dung from these ponds, innumerable blood worms may be found; some are also to be met with in the ditches or drains that run from houses, farm-yards, &c. but they are not so large as those found in the cow-layers; in the ditches, drains and sewers, the curious may find so many blood-worms, that certain parts appear a mass of blood, over which innumerable gnats are playing; they are about an inch long, and not much thicker than a worsted needle, and of a blood-

red colour, from which they take their name; they generally appear in April; this worm is very lively, and a most killing bait for many Fish, particularly Gudgeons, Carp, Roach, Dace, &c. when two or three are put on the hook together. To preserve them alive, keep them in some earth, mixed with a little damp cow, horse, or pig dung; or they may be kept in the soil you find them in, when taken from the ponds.

Marl, or Tag-Tail Worm.

This worm is so called from its having a yellow tail; they are found in marley lands and clayey banks. It is a clean light red-coloured worm, with a deep head, very strong and lively on the hook, and requires but little scouring. One or two of them put on a No. 6 hook are the most killing worm-bait for Trout in the morning early, and late in the evening, particularly during the month of April, and after rain, while the water is a little coloured; so are the smaller size for Dace, Roach, Perch, and Gudgeons.—Note. During the Spring months this worm cannot be too much prized.

Lug-worms, in some parts called sand worms, are worms dug out of the sea sand when the tide has left it dry.

Shrimps.

Live or dead Shrimps are a good bait for Perch, Eels, Ruffs or Pope, and Flounders. If dead, the shell or case must be taken off before you use them. When you use Shrimps for a bait, enter the point of

your hook in its side near the back, and bring it to the side of the head, near the eye. During the Summer months the canal crossing the Isle of Dogs abounds with shrimps, which are easily taken with a minnow or fine landing-net.

Note.—When angling for Perch, Carp, Pike, Barbel, Chub, Roach, &c. during the months of June, July, August, and September, you must not expect them to feed in the middle of the day, say from eleven till four o'clock in the afternoon, unless the weather be very dark and gloomy, during drizzling rain or a light breeze of wind; therefore, fish early and late, or you lose your time and labour.

To Cleanse and keep Worms.

The best method of cleansing or scouring worms from their filth, is by putting them into damp moss: persons who live in the country have it in their power to get moss with little trouble, as it grows in most fields, on commons, and on banks. About February and March it is in the best state, and again towards Michaelmas, at which time I generally procure as much as will last me for a twelvemonth; in London, it may be purchased at the herb-shops in Govent Garden Market, Fleet Market, and, I believe, in all the vegetable markets.

Worms should lie in moss two or three days before they are used; they will then be much brighter, larger, and more lively than when first taken; if you find any of them bruised, mutilated, or sickly, throw

them away; for, if they die, their bodies soon corrupt, spoil the moss, and will occasion the death of others; therefore make it a rule, when you leave off angling, or when you have returned from it, to look over your worms, cast away the dead, and give the remainder some fresh damp moss, or a piece of damp old net or coarse hempen cloth.

Some writers and anglers speak of worms being a more enticing bait when put among fennel instead of moss, or by putting camphor among the moss, or dipping the worm in tar-water immediately before you put it on the hook. I can truly affirm, I have never found any of those methods increase my sport, but have well-grounded reasons to suppose that Fish refused my worm when so doctored, but would have taken it freely if offered in a clean scoured state.—Some recommend worms to be put in a box scented with oil of ivy; this I never tried. Brandlings will also keep lively and fit for use a considerable time, in a mixture of damp garden mould and rotten bark, taken from the dung, or bark heaps, found in and about tan-yards.

By practising this method, you may preserve your worms for a few weeks, which is material when on an excursion, as worms are difficult to get in dry weather; if you find, when out angling all day, that the worms you have with you seem sickly, gather a little grass and damp it, and put it among them, which will much refresh them; some dip their bag of worms in water, but it is a bad practice, for it frequently kills them all.

To preserve a stock of Worms all the year.

Take about a pound of mutton-suet, chopped into small pieces, and put it into a saucepan, containing about a quart of water: let it boil slowly, until the suet is dissolved, and then into this liquor dip some pieces of coarse hempen sacking, or cloth, such as is called coarse wrapper by the linen-drapers, or old, coarse, worn-out towels, old nets and coarse nail bags, (if new cloth is used, it should be well washed to free it from the oil or dressing which may adhere to it from the loom;) when the cloths are well saturated with the fat liquor, and are become cold, then mix some fresh mould with them, and put the whole into a deep earthen vessel or small tub; into this, pour a good stock of marsh, or red worms, and over the top tie a cloth to prevent their escaping, and in which there should be a few very small holes to admit air. If the vessel be placed in a cool dark cellar, the worms will feed and cleanse themselves, and keep lively and fit for use for many months. It is advisable to keep the different species of worms in separate vessels, so that the Angler can, at any time, select the sort and quantity necessary, to be placed in moss preparatory to his using them.

During the time your worms are in pans or tubs, it will be proper, when the earth they are among gets very dry at the top, to place those vessels, for a few minutes, in a gentle shower of rain, or to dip your hand in water, and sprinkle some on it; but soft rain refreshes worms amazingly, and is, therefore, to be

preferred. Brandlings will live some months in pans or tubs half-filled with dung from a pig-stye, mixed with yellow gravel, changed once a month, as follows:—turn the pan or tub upside down, put in fresh dung and gravel; then put the worms in again; if any are dead, cast them away.

The best time to collect a stock of worms is in March or April, for at that season they are very healthy, and may be kept more than twelve months, by following the directions here given.

I would advise the Angler always to take a few red worms with him when he goes to fish, even if he intends to try for Roach or any other Fish; for, although paste is the proper bait for Roach, yet, sometimes, a Perch will make his appearance among the Roach which the Angler has collected about his baited hook, with the ground-bait, and his sport will instantly cease; in that case, a worm-bait is the best remedy, for, on applying it, the disturber is generally soon taken; a change of weather, by the wind getting up, will also sometimes put an end to Roach-fishing, and yet the day be fine for roving for Perch, which, without a few well-scoured worms, cannot be practised.

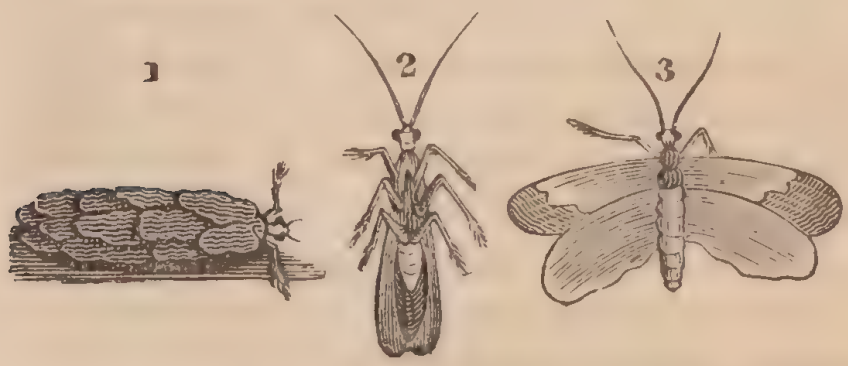
Lob, marsh, brandling, red, and blood-worms, may be purchased at most of the fishing-tackle shops in London, at from threepence to sixpence per hundred.

The breed of Wasps, Bobs, Clap-baits, Cads, Cadis, or Case-worms, and Maggots, described.

The young wasp or bee, when in the state of a maggot, is an excellent dapping and tripping bait for Trout; this maggot is much like the common gentle, but considerably larger: use a No. 8 hook, and put a good bunch of them on at a time, and let them swim down the current, touching the bottom. There are two other kinds of maggots, which were much used by Anglers formerly, but the experienced of the present day very properly reject them. These maggots, or, as some call them, bobs and grubs, are found when the ground is turned up by the plough, particularly in the Spring, and in a sandy soil; they are three times as big as a gentle, and have a red head: they are the breed of insects called cock-chafers; they afford food for rooks, who will closely follow the plough in search of them, and, during the season, grow very fat upon them. The other is called the cow-dung bob, grub, or clap-bait; they may be found in the Spring months and part of Summer, under half-dry cow-dung, in meadows, grass commons, &c. This maggot is the produce of the blue or cow-beetle, which flies about in the Summer evenings, and frequently smites the patient Angler on the face, in his return from his favourite amusement. The colour of this maggot is a dusky yellowish white, and some have a dark-coloured head.

The only success I have met with in angling with

these bobs or grubs (Note, grubs or maggots are used chiefly by country Anglers in still waters, especially for Perch; they are found in light mould, and under and about cabbages, potatoes, &c. they are very tough, and will live a long while among half-dried cow-dung or light mould; they vary in colours, some are grey—which I have found the best—others green and brown) has been while fishing for Perch in the months of July and August, especially in ponds and still waters, when they refused a worm, but they have generally been small Fish; there are also two or three other insects, known by the names of cad-bait. Cads, cadis, or straw case-worms, which may be kept and scoured in a box or bag, in damp house-sand; but they are hardly worth the trouble of getting or preserving for Roach-fishing while gentles can be procured. First, the cad in a husk or case; secondly,



No. 1, in the Husk. No. 2, Perfect. No. 3, on the Wing.

a complete fly; thirdly, on the wing.—This fly is the stone-fly, by some called the cad-fly; the green and

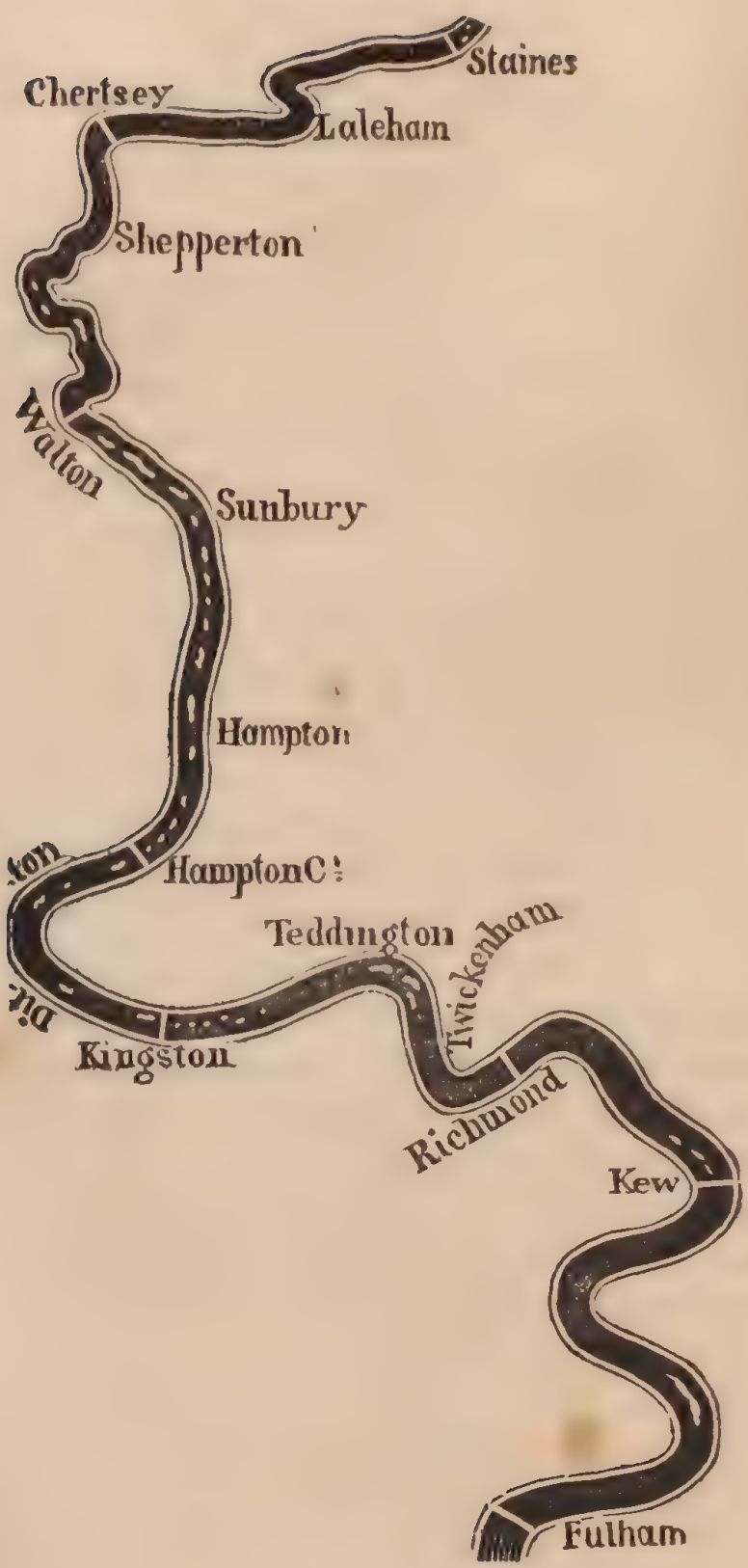
grey drake are similarly incased in pieces of rushes, dried stems of weeds, &c. until they become flies: those look like maggots or grubs, of a yellowish colour, that are found in cases, or husks of wood, and stones; and those incased in rushy or weedy husks, are, invariably, green. Case-worms, rough-coats, &c. which were formerly used in angling for Roach, Dace, and Chub, but in respect to their value as bait for fishing, compared with what the modern Anglers use, they are hardly worth naming or describing, yet are extremely curious as a natural production. The cad may be found on the margin of small rivers (the banks of the New River and the Lea abound with them) adhering to the bank sides, or a little below the surface, and sometimes on the top, during the Spring months. This insect is about three-quarters of an inch long, enclosed in a rough husk or case, the size of a large tobacco-pipe stem, and has the appearance of small pieces of decayed sticks, &c. As the weather becomes warm, they break through the case, and are a complete fly.—Note. In the New River, and some other small streams, I have found the Roach take a cad freely in the month of April, and Trout will, sometimes prefer it to a worm. When you bait with a cad, break the husk in which it is enclosed, carefully take out the cad and place it on the hook in the same way you do a gentle for Roach; but for Trout, put two on, one to cover the shank of the hook, and the other to cover the point and bend.

The New River—Juvenile Anglers, and Angling described.

The New River has many fish in all parts of it, from Islington to its source near Ware, in Hertfordshire; though they are not so large as those caught in the Thames or Lea, this river being perfectly free for all persons to angle in, (and very narrow near London) it is particularly well calculated for the young Angler to practise in. He may here take Chub, Roach, Dace, Perch, Gudgeons, Bleak, Eels, and Minnows, within a mile of the metropolis. In the preserved parts, about Southgate, Enfield-Park, Enfield, and Winchmore-Hill, the New River can boast of good Carp, Jack, Roach, Chub, large Gudgeons, and Eels, but in the more exposed or open free parts of this stream the fish are very small. The curious little fish, called a Stone Loach, is often caught in this River while angling for Gudgeons.

This fine artificial stream is near forty miles in length, and has upwards of two hundred bridges and forty-three sluices: over and under it, many small brooks and water-courses have their passage between the bason at Chadwell, and London. The New River is a nursery for London Anglers, and where the juvenile Angler makes his first essay to take small Perch, Gudgeons, Roach, Bleak, &c., either at bottom with worms, gentles, cads, or paste, or at top dapping with a house-fly or whipping with a small black artificial gnat-fly. From this place he proceeds

to the River Lea, where with attention, he may become a complete Angler, and boldly challenge the world to a trial of skill. The Angler who practises in the New River, is the butt of the superficial and unreflecting Fisherman, who does not consider that the practice of taking very small Fish is the only way to make a good Angler; here, the little school-boy commences angling, and immediately sees the necessity of using the smallest hooks, a fine light pliable rod and a float to carry one or two small shot, to which is added a single hair line, or he has no chance of killing as many Fish as those about him, and the banks of this stream are generally well studded with young Anglers. The New River Angler, also soon finds that he must strike sharp, but with a certain sleight of hand from the wrist, or he soon destroys his fragile tackle; thus, being early accustomed to the finest way of angling, he notes the superiority of striking a Fish; and when he tries his skill in waters which abound with Fish, either large or small, he is soon convinced that art is superior to strength, and thus becomes a good Angler, from habit and experience. Cads are very numerous in the New River. They are found, during Summer, adhering to bricks, large stones, or sunken pieces of wood, planks and posts, under water. For a cut of Cads, and the nature and value of them as Baits, &c. see pages 307 and 308.


Staines
Chertsey
Laleham
Shepperton
Walton
Sunbury
Hampton
Hampton Ct
Teddington
Twickenham
Kingston
Richmond
Kew
Fulham

The River Thames, and its Fishery.*

The noble Thames, for ships and Fishes famed,
The Queen of Rivers by the poet named.

THIS river consists principally of the united streams of the Isis and Thame. The former, rising on the confines of Gloucestershire, a little to the south-west of Cirencester, becomes navigable at Lechlade: near Oxford it receives the Charwell, and, continuing its course by Abingdon to Dorchester, unites with the Thame. After this junction, the united stream continues its course by Wallingford, Reading, Marlow,

* The white marks, in the annexed Map of the River Thames, across, are bridges; and the white dots or marks in the middle are islands, commonly called aights.

Henley, Eton, Windsor, and near Staines it receives the Coln from the North, from whence it passes Hampton, Richmond, Kew, and Brentford, to London; and, below London Bridge, is covered for several miles with vast numbers of ships from all nations. Proceeding on to the sea, it passes Greenwich, Woolwich, and Gravesend; below which, it becomes of vast magnitude, and receives the Medway, not far from its mouth.

In describing the river Thames' fishery, I shall commence at Staines, a pleasant market-town, about seventeen miles west of London; to which place the jurisdiction of the Lord Mayor of London over the Thames extends, for the preservation of the river and Fish. At this place, and all other parts of the Thames under the above jurisdiction, bottom-angling is prohibited, under the penalty of £20 and loss of rod and line from the first of March until the first of June. March, April, and May, are called *fence-months;* during which time, all fresh-water Fish cast their spawn, Carp and Trout excepted (Trout spawn about October). These months are, therefore, properly held sacred, that the future Fish may not be destroyed.

The principal House at Staines is the Bush. Boats may be hired here, and good sport met with in angling near the bridge; many Barbel, weighing near twenty pounds each, have been caught here. Between Staines and Laleham are some places suited to bank-fishing.

Laleham

is a small village, but extremely rural, and pleasantly

situated. The river is very narrow and shallow in this part. On these shallows many Fish are taken by whipping, particularly a delicious Fish called the Skegger, supposed to be of the Salmon species. You whip for them with a fly-rod, light line, and No. 10 hook, baited with a gentle; a red-palmer is also a good bait. These Fish are allowed to be caught during the fence-months, on the principle that they are going to leave the river, probably never to return, as the time of their migration is during the fence-months. In the Summer, Chub and Dace are taken here in the same way of angling, substituting a fly for the gentle. Between Laleham and Chertsey Bridge, good Barbel, Roach, &c. are caught in a boat, and from the banks.

Chertsey Bridge

is about twenty miles from London, and a short distance from the town of that name: the house most frequented by Anglers, formerly, was the Cricketers, situated between the bridge and Chertsey, but there are several other houses in the neighbourhood, affording good accommodation. Boats may be hired here for angling in the deeps (and tackle, if a visitor should be deficient), with a boatman to attend. The customary charge on these occasions for the day, is five or six shillings, and a dinner, &c. for the man.

Chertsey-deeps contain plenty of fine Barbel, Roach, Dace, &c.; also about the bridge and its wharfings there is good angling, which may be practised with-

out a boat. Here you may take Perch, Roach, Dace, Chub, Bleak, and sometimes a Trout. From hence to Shepperton, through the meadows, you will find several capital swims, where I have had excellent sport with Chub and Perch, both early and late; and have also taken many Roach, Dace, and Bleak, in the eddies when the water was a little coloured.

Shepperton

is near nineteen miles from London; and though a small village, yet the Angler will find every accommodation and comfort he can desire. There are two inns in the village; the Anchor, which is an excellen house, and the King's Arms, one of the second order of inns.

Shepperton-deeps are well stored with Fish; the new deep, particularly, is a fine steady swim, full of heavy Barbel, Chub, Roach, and Dace: above this swim are Gudgeon scouers, which, with the deeps, are fished in a boat. From opposite the deeps, down to the ferry, is good bank-fishing for Perch, Roach, Dace, and Chub: near the ferry, on the shallow, I have taken several Pope or Ruff, and some Trout. From this ferry to Walton Bridge is good Perch-fishing from the banks; and, in the dead water, close to the paling of Oatlands' Park, the Angler will find Jack, Perch, and other Fish, which have been driven from the river in time of floods: in the Spring, particularly, many good Jack and Perch are taken here.

On the north side, between Shepperton and Walton-bridge, is Halliford, a small scattered village. The Ship is the house generally used by the Anglers who fish in this neighbourhood.

At Walton, likewise, there are some good deeps and swims; and, on the opposite side to Hampton, by Sunbury, are many good places for angling in boats, or on the side of the river, for Perch, Roach, Chub, &c. particularly one deep hole and eddy, near Walton-bridge, on the Sunbury side, where Roach are killed, both numerous and heavy. At Walton, the Duke's Head is the house mostly resorted to by Anglers; there are, also, boats and experienced boatmen always ready, at Walton, to attend the sportsman.

Hampton

is a most delightful village, pleasantly situated on a rise, commanding beautiful views over the Thames, Moulsey-hurst, and the adjacent country; and being only thirteen miles from Hyde Park Corner, is frequently visited by Anglers, who find every comfort and accommodation they can wish at the Red Lion, and at the Bell. There is also a circulating library, and a fishing-tackle shop at Hampton, with several boats and boatmen, ever ready to attend, or let their boats to Anglers.

Bell, at Hampton.

Hampton-deeps are justly famous for a variety of large Fish, particularly Barbel, Chub, Perch, Roach, and Dace; Trout are also frequently taken. Near to the side of the late Mr. Garrick's lawn and gardens, and in the meadows, at a short distance from the west-side of the town, there are some fine holes, swims, and eddies, abounding with Perch, Chub, Roach, and some small Barbel, which can be fished for, very conveniently, from the banks without the assistance of a boat; and when the water is a little coloured, or if it be late in the evening, many good Fish may be taken. These holes may be easily found by strangers, from observ-

ing the places in the banks where clay has been dug for mixing ground-bait, and also by noticing where the ground is a good deal trodden.

Hampton-Court.

Two miles nearer London is Hampton-Court and bridge, where, in a very deep water, called the Water Gallery, not far from the well-known Toy Tavern, is excellent Roach, and especially Perch-fishing, either from the bank or a boat.

Thames-Ditton.

Swan, at Ditton.

is opposite Hampton-Court, on the other side of the river, and is a very pleasant place, about thirteen miles

from London, and is generally well attended by Anglers; many good Fish are taken here in boat or punt-fishing, chiefly Perch, Barbel, Chub, Roach, Trout, and Dace. The Swan is the house most frequented by Anglers; and Mr. Lock, the landlord, has the merit of giving general satisfaction to his visitors, and often the pleasure of seeing them take away many pounds weight of the finest fresh-water fish.

Kingston and Hampton-Wick.

Kingston is a good market-town, ten miles from Hyde-Park Corner, parted by the Thames from Hampton-Wick. Much good sport is met with by Anglers who resort here for Barbel, Roach, Perch, Gudgeon, and Dace-fishing, particularly in the Gudgeon-season, for which purpose several boats are kept at both these places. Between Hampton-Wick and Twickenham is some good Winter and Spring fishing from the banks, particularly in Teddington meadows, where the Fisherman, by noticing where his brother-anglers have tracked and trodden the ground, will readily find several favourite holes and swims well stored with Roach, Dace, Perch, and Gudgeons; but, during the Summer months, these holes are generally choked with weeds; then punt-fishing must be resorted to.

Twickenham.

This is a charming spot, about ten miles from Hyde-Park Corner, and has two good houses where the Angler may take up his abode, and have every atten-

tion paid him; namely, the King's Head and the George. Angling at Twickenham is mostly practised in boats, which are easily procured, with baits, lines, and other requisites, by inquiring at your inn for a boatman: the lover of Roach and Dace-fishing will here find excellent sport; a few Barbel are occasionally taken, but not large. The best part of the season is the Autumn, when Roach and Dace retire to the deeps, which are very extensive off Twickenham. The next place is

Punt-fishing.

Richmond,

where Barbel, Roach, Dace, Perch, and Gudgeons, are caught from the banks as well as in boats; from hence to Isleworth, and its vicinity, is good Perch-fishing. Roach and Dace are also taken all the way from Richmond-bridge to Kew-bridge, by angling off the horse path; but it is necessary that the Angler should

be apprised, that the tide flows up as high as Teddington, and that, during its flowing, and at high water, few Fish of any kind are taken. Yet the tide certainly does not affect the water much, except at the full and new moon, at which time, it is high water at Richmond about five o'clock; by noticing this, the Angler, from London may avoid being disappointed in his expectation of sport, and save himself a profitless journey.

The best place for bank-fishing, at Richmond, is between the bridge and the Pigeons public-house: this part has lately been cleansed and deepened for punt-fishing, close to the Duke of Buccleugh's lawn. Good sport is often met with in angling here for Roach, Dace, Perch, &c. Barbel are also frequently taken.—BROWN, the boatman, of this town, is extremely attentive to the lovers of angling, and very reasonable in his charges. The current near the Duke of Buccleugh's lawn, is generally gentle enough to angle for Roach and Dace, with a single hair line and tip capped float.

Kew and Putney Bridges.

Under the arches of both these bridges, very fine Roach are taken; the proper time to angle here is at or near, or say two hours before, low water. From these bridges to London, there is but little bank-fishing, the tide and current being too strong. Formerly, Fishermen used to tie several large hooks to the end of a strong line, and sink them to the bottom, when the tide was falling, and when a Fish touched it they struck;—this was called scratching for Barbel.

Battersea, Westminster, and Blackfriars Bridges.

Under and about the starlings of all these bridges, many large Roach, and also some Barbel and Dace, are caught, at or near low water. Fishing in these places, of course, can only be accomplished in a boat, which you may hire for a shilling an hour.—Note. Let your baited hook always touch or drag the bottom a little, while angling under these Bridges.

As the rivers Thames and Lea are the chief sources whence the London Anglers derive their amusement, I shall state the seasons when the Fish feed best in each river, and by attending to which the inexperienced Angler may save many fruitless journies, and know best how to divide his time, and enjoy his amusement, in both rivers. And, first, of the Thames.

Angling is prohibited (as before observed) in the Thames, during the months of March, April, and May. In June commences Gudgeon-fishing, and continues till the latter end of July, during which time innumerable fine Gudgeons are taken, frequently from thirty to fifty dozen in a day's Angling, and also many Perch and Dace. In the latter end of July, the Barbel begin to feed, and so continue till November. And from Michaelmas to Christmas is the most likely time of the year for taking heavy Roach, in the River Thames, but if the Winter is very mild, and when the River is free from floods, there is good Chub and Roach-fishing to be met with in the different holes and moderate eddies, those places are then fished from the shore.

Jack, Perch, and Trout.

The River Lea and its Fisheries described.

The gulfy Lea its sedgy tresses rears.

The river Lea takes its rise in Leagrave Marsh, in the south of Bedfordshire, and runs into Hertfordshire, and is navigable from the county town of Hertford to Blackwall and Limehouse. This river, though but a small stream when compared with the Thames, deserves the admiration of the natural philosopher, and the lover of angling, for the beauty of the surrounding country, and the valuable Fish it contains. The valley through which it flows, for many miles, is most delightfully picturesque; the towns, villages, and seats on the west, the forest-scenery, and bold hills on the east, are not surpassed by any I am acquainted with; many hundred Jack and Pike are taken in this river, annually, by trolling, several of which weigh from ten to upwards of sixteen pounds each.

The Fish, I believe, are better protected and fed in this, than in most other navigable rivers, both by nature and art; several miles of the river Lea are preserved for the Angler's diversion, for which he

Rye House
Shepperds Water
River Stort
Hoddesdon
Pages Water
Nazing
Broxbourn Bridge
Nazing Marsh
Wormley
Cheshunt
Waltham Abbey
Enfield Wash
Sewardstone
Shurgys Water
THE RIVER LEA
Chinkford
Bleak Hall or Cooks Ferry
Bowerbankss Water
Tottenham Mills
Bannisters Water
Lea Bridge
Temple Mills
Bow
Stratford
Bromley Mills
Blackwall
R. THAMES

pays an annual sum, by way of subscription; in some waters, it is a guinea; in others half that sum; and the Proprietors of those subscription waters take every possible care to preserve the Fish, therein, from Poachers. The size and fine flavour of the Pike, Trout, Carp, Perch, Eels, Gudgeons, and various other species, prove that nature has not been sparing in providing for the finny inhabitants of the river Lea. This river does not afford very great amusement to the Fly-fisher, because it cannot boast of numerous Trout; yet, those who are satisfied with whipping or dapping for Chub, Dace, and Bleak, may meet with much sport in various parts of the River Lea.

Hertford

is a borough, and the county-town of Hertfordshire, twenty-one miles from London, a place of great note formerly, but now exceedingly dull, except at the assize time, or when an election for a member of parliament takes place. The Angler may take some good Trout, Dace, &c. in this neighbourhood, and fish the River Lea to Ware, about a mile distant.

Ware

is a large and populous market-town, on the High North Road, twenty miles from London, situated close to the River Lea, and has many fine Trout, Eels, &c. in the water round it. This river is a free fishery, from Ware to Stanstead.

King's Arms.

The next place to Stanstead is Mr. Shepherd's, the King's-Arms, near the Rye-House. At this place, I would strongly recommend the Angler to take up his quarters as long as convenience will allow him, for here he will meet with good sport in fishing, and the best accommodation at the house, which is a neat inn, and much frequented by the lovers of angling. In consequence of its distance from the metropolis (eighteen miles) the company which use this house is more select than at many others nearer London. The house has a very inviting and pretty appearance, as you approach it, in passing over the New River, and the charming corn-fields or downs, near Hoddesdon, from which it is distant about a mile.

The whole of this water is well stored with a variety of Fish, and the Angler will meet with many deep still holes, swims, and eddies; where, if he possesses tolerable skill, he cannot fail getting some fine well-fed Jack, Pike, Chub, Gudgeons, Roach, Perch, Eels, &c. The several dates and drawings in the house will, show what kind of Fish, in point of size, the Angler is likely to meet with in this water. The people belonging to the house generally direct the stranger to those parts of the river where he is likely to have sport.

That part of the Lea between Shepherd's House and the River Stort, is a fine piece of deep water, and never without fine Jack, &c. In this water, Roach are caught with black scurf, or spots on their gills and bodies, different from any of the species I have ever met with elsewhere. There is, also, good Roach-fishing from the barge-path, between the four clap-stiles; and again in the pool or tumbling bay, called Black Pool. and by Crane's lock, there is generally a heavy Trout or two, and on the East side of the waters called Oaktree field, the water is well worth fishing, especially in the Spring, for Jack, Pike, Chub, and Roach.

Hoddesdon

is a cheerful, clean, healthy town, seventeen miles from London, and most pleasantly situated, commanding several fine views. Here is a circulating library, well stocked with books, stationery, &c.; several good inns: and, among others, Batty's, the Black Lion, is noted for home-brewed ale of a superior strength and

flavour. Stage coaches pass through here almost every hour, which gives to the town a bustling and lively appearance. Many Anglers who visit these parts put up at Hoddesdon, and go to Shepherd's, near the Rye-house, or other parts of the river Lea, fish during the day, and return in the evening to their respective [illegible]. If the Angler should meet with loss by break[illegible] lines, hooks, &c. while fishing in the waters near Hoddesdon, he may get assistance from an ingenious tackle man and good Angler in the town, named Sherrall, who is ever ready to relieve a brother of the rod and line, when in distress.

The Eel and Pike, Page's Water.

This water joins Shepherd's. Page's, though a public-house, is lonely, and not much suited for the lodging and accommodation of the Angler; yet there is good fishing here, at some seasons of the year, for Pike, Chub, Roach, &c. and also in the stream called the Mill-river, running across the meads to the westward of the Lea, particularly at a place called Calais-point, or Breeches-maker's hole. This stream supplies Hoddesdon and Broxbourn-mills, and empties itself into the Lea, near Broxbourn-bridge. Between Page's Water and Scorer's, at Broxbourn, part of the river belongs to Nazing parish, in which is good trolling and Perch-fishing, particularly in that part called the Gull. The Eel and Pike, I am told, was much frequented by Anglers, fifty or sixty years since, then kept by the parents of the present occupier.

Broxbourn.

The Crown.

The Crown, at Broxbourn-bridge, is situated close to the river, and presents a cheerful, rural, inviting appearance as you approach it, from the number of fowls, pigeons, cows, &c. feeding around the house. The Angler and contemplative man may here find a home: every attention is paid to render his situation comfortable, by the most obliging behaviour, with excellent fare, good cooking, wine, home-brewed ale, cleanliness, &c. of the proprietors, Mrs. Scorer and Sons, who rent the waters above and below the Crown; the former containing the Carthagena or Lock pool, and meeting the Gull water; the latter down to the King's Weir, Wormly; the whole of which waters are well stored with Jack, Pike, Chub, Perch, Roach, Dace, Eels, &c. and some heavy Trout.

Cheshunt, Waltham Abbey, and Chinkford.

From the King's Weir, Wormly, to Waltham Abbey, you may take Jack, Pike, Trout, Chub, Roach, &c.—Note. The river, from the King's Weir to the Government water, Waltham Abbey, is now a subscription water; and from Waltham Abbey to Flander's Weir there is no particular place to detain the Angler, since the Swan and Pike public-house and water have become private or Government property, the several proprietors not being very willing to grant permission to the Angler to try his skill. To the left, near Sewardstone-mills, stands the deserted unlicensed public-house, the Crown formerly much frequented; about a mile further, near Chinkford, is Shury Carpenter's, or Flander's Weir subscription-water and house, at a guinea per annum; which water is well stored with Gudgeons, Roach, Dace, Perch, Barbel, Chub, numerous heavy Eels, Jack, and Pike. A friend of mine (Mr. Finer) lately took a Trout in this water, which weighed eight pounds—a live Gudgeon was the bait.

Bleak Hall, or Cook's Ferry,

is a public-house kept by Mr. Wicks, for the accommodation of Anglers, and is situated close to the river, in a sequestered rural spot, at the bottom of Water Lane, which is opposite the Angel Inn, Edmonton, say about six miles from London, and for many years well known to, and frequented by, the lovers of angling. The waters are stored with Carp, Barbel, Chub, Jack,

Pike, Roach, Gudgeons, Perch, Eels, &c. which are preserved, for the diversion and amusement of Anglers, at the annual subscription of a guinea.

Before the bridge was built at this place, it was a ferry, known formerly by the name of Cook's Ferry. Old Matthew Cook was well known to the old Anglers for his rudeness and eccentricity, and for his love of the feline race; for he used to keep many cats about the house, much to the vexation and inconvenience of his guests: the average number was fourteen.

Next to this is

The Blue House and Fishery, formerly Bowerbank's, now kept by Mr. Ford.

This Fishery, a few years since, was private propery, but is now a subscription-water for angling; and across it is a ferry to Walthamstow and Higham-hill. This water is well stored with Carp, Barbel, and Chub, also numerous fine Jack, Pike, Roach, Dace, and Eels.

Hews's the Ferry House, late Bannister's Water,

is a division of the river Lea, called Bannister's Water, now rented by Mr. Hews, who has lately made it a subscription-water; it has a public house belonging to it, situated on the cross-road from Tottenham High Cross to Walthamstow, Woodford and Epping Forest. There are many Jack, Pike, Perch, Eels, Chub, and other fish, taken in this water during the Summer season, which is then well frequented, it being but a few miles distant from town. From the termination of Mr. Hews's

fishery to the Horse and Groom, at Lea-bridge, the river is free for angling.

The Horse and Groom, Lea Bridge,

is most pleasantly situated a short distance from Lea-bridge, close to the river side, commanding extensive views over the marshes to Walthamstow, Epping-Forest, Low-Layton, &c. To the latter place is a charming ride in Summer, over the marshes, particularly during hay-making; after which season, the marshes are well stocked with oxen, cows, horses, and other cattle, which much enliven the scene during the remainder of the Summer. The Horse and Groom being so short a distance from the metropolis (about three miles and a half only,) induces

the lovers of angling and rural scenery often to visit this house, which may be done with little expense, either of time or money; the Clapton stages coming within a half-mile of Lea-bridge, every hour in the day, from nine in the morning till nine at night, thereby enabling the London Angler to enjoy his favourite amusement for a few hours daily, of which he would otherwise be deprived, from the distance of other waters.

Although this water contains a great variety of fine fish, and possesses so many holes, swims, and sources for their protection, feed, &c. yet I must not hide from my readers that it requires much skill to kill fish here, for the fish are so well fed by nature, that they are not easily induced to take a bait, unless of the most choice kind, and attached to the best and finest tackle; and again, as birds grow wild and shy by being frequently shot at, so the fish, in this and all other waters that are daily angled, become timid and suspicious. Many are hooked by unskilful Anglers and get away again, consequently they are not so ready to take a bait another time; and it often happens, that when a good Fish is taken, you will find several marks about it where it has before been hooked. Yet a good Angler would feel more gratification in killing a brace of heavy Fish (suppose Barbel) in such a water, than in killing twenty while sitting confined in a punt on the Thames, and angling with a leger line, where little more than strength of tackle is requisite.

The following Fish are taken by angling in this water:—Jack, Pike, Carp, Tench, Perch, Barbel, Chub, Bream, Roach, Dace, Bleak, Gudgeons, Eels, and, perchance, a Trout.

White-House Water, kept by Mr. Beresford.

This is a subscription-water: formerly, this was a favourite and well-frequented place by the lovers of angling of the old school. This water contains fine Carp, Gudgeons, Barbel, Chub, Jack, Pike, Eels, Roach, &c. This water runs to Stratford.

At Stratford, Bromley, and West-Ham, a great many good Roach, Dace, Flounders, &c. are taken, in the mill-pools and waters around; but it is very unpleasant fishing, the tide leaving the banks extremely dirty and slippery: and the Angler is also continually annoyed by the many passengers, as to "What sport?" "Do the Fish bite?" and other rude interrogations. About a mile below Bromley, at Blackwall, the river Lea is lost in the majestic Thames. Fishing in the river Lea is an excellent finishing school for Anglers; for the Fish are shy, and the water is fished by the best and most experienced Anglers (which the less experienced may daily see, mix with, and study); the finest tackle is also used, and all that art and skill is capable of, must be put in requisition to kill Fish in this river, particularly in those parts nearest the metropolis. The advantages that the London Angler possesses, are the facility with which he can supply himself with the best of tackle, baits, &c. and, also,

his frequently mixing with Anglers from different parts of the empire; the different modes pursued by the Angler from the north and west are discussed by the southern Angler; of course, much information may be gained by the attentive and inquiring lover of the art. After attaining the practical knowledge of killing Fish in this river, the London Angler will find no difficulty in supplying his table, or that of a friend, with Fish from any other river or water in the United Kingdom.

Rivers Severn, Trent, Dove, Medway, &c. described.

In England and Wales, it is said, there are upwards of three hundred rivers. I shall, however, only notice a few of the most considerable, and describe their course, and the Fish with which they chiefly abound.

The SEVERN takes its rise in Montgomeryshire, in Wales, and runs through part of Shropshire, Staffordshire, and Worcestershire, passes below Worcester, and runs on to the city of Gloucester; this river abounds with Salmon, Trout, Eels, and other Fish.

The TRENT first shows itself in Staffordshire, and in its course, passes Nottingham, Newark, Gainsborough, and Hull, where it then loses its name by mixing in the Humber, which falls into the sea, at Flamborough-head: this is a noble river, and well stocked with Jack, Carp, Bream, Eels, Barbel, Chub, Perch, Roach, Flounders, &c. Many small rivers help to supply the Trent, during its course, all well stored with Trout and Grayling,) namely, the Dove, the Sour, the Idle, the Leen, &c.

The Mole and Colne.

The sullen Mole, that hides its diving flood.

This river is so called from its running under ground in a part of its course, and is very famous for Pike, Jack, Perch, Trout, Chub, Carp, Roach, Dace, Bream, Gudgeons and other Fish. The Mole empties itself into the Thames at East Moulsey, in Surrey. The Angler will find good sport, particularly in the neighbourhood of Esher, and Leatherhead, on to Cobham, Dorking, and Ryegate.

The river and branches of the Colne are much frequented by the London Anglers in the neighbourhood of Uxbridge, Iver, Longford, &c. for Trout, Jack, Roach, Chub, &c. The Colne rises in Hertfordshire, and divides Middlesex from Buckinghamshire, passing Watford, Uxbridge, &c. and falls into the Thames, at Staines.

The DOVE rises near the Three Shire Stones, in Derbyshire, passes on to Ashburn, from thence falls into the Trent: this little river abounds with Trout and Grayling.

The MEDWAY rises in Sussex, through which county and Kent it flows to Rochester and Chatham, passing by Maidstone, &c. and is well stored with Flounders, Pike, Eels, Perch, and a few Salmon and other Fish.

The STOUR rises in Kent, runs past Ashford, round Canterbury, from thence to Hackington Forditch, and continues its course to Sandwich, and there empties itself into the sea: this river abounds with Roach, Trout,

Eels, &c.—the Forditch, or large White-flesh Trout, is met with also in this river.

The Ouse rises in Oxfordshire, proceeds to Buckingham, gliding on to Bedford and Huntingdon, from thence to Ely, and falls into the sea at Lynn, in Norfolk. The Ouse is well stored with Jack, Pike, Bream, Perch, Eels, &c.

The Cam rises in Cambridgeshire, runs by Cambridge, and, after some miles, is lost in the river Ouse: the Cam does not boast of Trout, but it may of Jack, Pike, Carp, Perch, Eels, Roach, &c. There are many large pieces of water near this river, known by the name of Meer's Lakes, &c. full of fine Tench and various other Fish: also in Ramsey-mere, near Huntingdon, famous for Eels and Pike.

The Tamer divides the counties of Cornwall and Devonshire, passes Launceston, Saltash, and Plymouth-Dock, and falls into Plymouth-Sound. It contains more Salmon than any other river in the West of England.

The Ex rises in Somersetshire, passes Tiverton and Exeter, and empties itself into the sea, at Exmouth: during its course, it takes the waters of several streams, and is well stored with Salmon, Trout, Eels, &c.

The Itchin rises in Hampshire, and passing by Rumsey and Winchester, falls into the sea, at Southampton; it abounds with Trout, fine Eels, and other Fish.

The Wye rises in Montgomeryshire, passes by Hereford and Monmouth, and falls into the Severn, below Chepstow; and is stored with Trout and Grayling.

The Eden, Humber, Tees, Ribble, Went,

Rother, Tweed, and Tyne, are the principal rivers in the North of England: and beside Salmon, the largest Salmon-Trout, and all the varieties of Trout, are more numerous in those rivers than in those of the South and Western parts of the Kingdom.

Subscription Waters.

The Royalty, or Colney Fishery, near Iver, Bucks, has lately been made a Subscription Water, at the rate of five guineas for annual subscribers, or one guinea for three days, or one day's Angling for three persons, and is well stocked with almost every species of the Finny Race; Minnows and Gudgeons are supplied to the Angler, by James Child, who has the care of the fishery, and may be seen at the Swan Inn, Iver. Tickets to be had at Ustonsons, Fishing-Tackle Maker, 204, Fleet Street.

The Surrey Canal Dock, at Rotherhithe, is a Subscription Water, at one guinea annually, or one shilling for each day's Angling; and contains Jack, Perch, and Roach, and immense numbers of Bream and Eels.

The Commercial Docks, at Rotherhithe, are well stocked with Jack, Perch, Bream, Eels, &c. but Angling in these Docks is only allowed to those, who can through acquaintance or interest, procure a Director's annual admission ticket.

Brief Remarks on Angling in every Month in the Year.

During the Winter quarter, the Angler must not expect many days, or even hours, when he can indulge

in his favourite amusement; for the pinching frost which binds up every water in icy chains, is scarcely less favourable than the boisterous winds and heavy rains, which cause the rivers to overflow and inundate the low lands around them, and not only disturb and discolour the waters, but even render them, in many cases, inaccessible. This, therefore, is the proper time for the Angler to examine his tackle, and repair whatever is amiss: to see whether his stock of the various articles requisite is complete, and, if not, to add to it whatever is wanting. The rods should be now examined, and repaired, if any repairs are wanting, and, above all, new varnishing should be done at this season; and, by the way, let me advise my angling friends to be particular in scraping off the old varnish before they put on new, or, if they even send their rods from home to be re-varnished, let them take the trouble to scrape off the old themselves. Nothing should be omitted, on the part of the Angler, to make his apparatus as complete as possible, that he may not be employed in making or repairing tackle, at a season when his time might be better employed in using it. Gay has given the Fisherman some wholesome advice on this subject, in the following beautiful lines, in the first canto of his Rural Sports:

When genial Spring a living warmth bestows,
And o'er the year her verdant mantle throws,
No swelling inundation hides the grounds,
But crystal currents glide within their bounds:

The finny brood their wonted haunts forsake,
Float in the sun, and skim along the lake:
With frequent leap they range the shallow streams,
Their silver coats reflect the dazzling beams.
Now let the Fisherman his toils prepare,
And arm himself with every watery snare;
His hooks, his lines, peruse with careful eye,
Increase his tackle, and his rod re-tie.

My advice, however, is to prepare every thing needful while—

The swelling inundation hides the ground.

and not have it to do—

When genial Spring a living warmth bestows.

Thus the Angler may employ some of his leisure time for future pleasure; but it is well to recollect, that Solomon says, "the wise man looks to the end;" for Anglers, as well as other sportsmen, are unable to follow their favourite amusement when infirmities and old age arrive: it would, therefore, be wise to cultivate the mind to get a taste for literature, as a resource in solitude, infirmities, or when age prevents the Sportsman from using his angle, or gun. A taste for reading may prevent the aged or infirm from becoming querulous, captious, or, probably, from too frequently applying to the bottle for solace, a failing (perhaps with some truth) frequently charged to the character of sportsmen.

JANUARY.—The only Fish that will take a bait this month, are Jack, Pike, Chub, and Roach, and, in some tide-rivers, Flounders, and Eels; for which you may angle an hour or two in the middle of the day, provided

the water is sufficiently clear, and tolerably free from ice.

FEBRUARY.—In the latter end of this month, if the weather be mild for the season, Carp, Perch, Roach, Chub, Flounders, and Eels, as well as Jack and Pike, will feed; Jack and Pike prefer live-baits, at this season. Fish only in the middle of the day, and in eddies near the banks, for Fish always get to the scouers and shallows, and near the banks after Winter, and remain there till after they have spawned. All fresh-water Fish move, during this and the following month, from their Winter quarters, and few of them will refuse a lively worm until June.

MARCH.—During this month, Jack, Pike, Carp, Perch, Roach, Dace, Chub, Gudgeons, and Minnows, will take a bait: still continue to use a live-bait for Jack generally, and prefer the middle of the day. Angle in the shallows and eddies, near the banks; for Dace, in shallow currents, and, especially, at the tail of mills, and in strong eddies. Jack, Pike, Smelts, Flounders, Bleak, and Perch, spawn in this month. Carp leave the deeps now in search of the fresh grass that begins to grow on the shallows, and, also, the small rushes which begin to shoot on the sides and banks of rivers, ponds, &c. Those rushes are sucked by the Carp, and afford much nourishment from the pith. Red-worms are now a killing bait for Carp.

APRIL.—All the Fish enumerated in March, with the addition of Trout, will feed this month, and sometimes Tench, (in rivers,) also Barbel, Bleak, Flounders, and

Eels: baits as before. Angle in shallows, sharps, &c. as in March. Barbel, Dace, Gudgeons, Minnows, Rudd, Bream, and Pope or Ruff, spawn this month.

MAY.—During this month, Eels will run and take a bait, night and day, and all the different species of fresh-water Fish now feed and take baits, at top and bottom of the water; also in ponds, you may expect sport. Still prefer to angle in the shallows, sharps, streams, and eddies. Roach, Chub, Carp, Miller's Thumb, and Umber or Grayling, spawn this month.

JUNE.—This month, the Bottom-Angler will find but indifferent sport, most Fish having recently spawned, and are out of condition, except Trout, which are now healthy and strong on the feed. Angle in the streams, eddies, and currents. Tench spawn this month.

JULY.—All fresh-water Fish will now feed, but best in the morning and evening, and will take a variety of baits; but, from the quantity of food they get from weeds, and not having quite recovered from spawning, they will not take a bait freely. Still continue to angle in the streams and scouers. Some say, that Gudgeons spawn again this month, or early in August, see page 43. Be that as it may, I know they will continue to follow the rake, and take a Red-worm.

AUGUST.—During this month, all kinds of Fish will take a bait; but you must fish in the morning, very early, and late in the evening, to get much sport. Some writers say, that Carp and Smelts spawn again this month, but I do not believe it: see page 95.

SEPTEMBER.—This month is a good season for most

kinds of angling, from early in the morning till late at night, if the water is not too bright. Barbel, Chub, Roach, and Dace, are now about leaving the weeds, and get into deeper water.—Note. Perch will take a live Minnow or Stone Loach, freely, during August, September, and October.

October.—This month is good for trolling and bottom-fishing, but not so for fly-fishing, or angling in ponds or still water. The weeds in rivers are now getting sour and rotten, and, in conseqence, the Fish are leaving them for holes and deeper water: now begin to use brains, as a bait for Chub, in preference to any other, and so continue to do all the Winter months, or say till April, or May. Note. If the weather continues mild for the season, Perch will still take a live bait.

November.—During this month, Chub, Roach, Jack, and Pike, will still take a bait, and, sometimes, very freely in the middle of the day. Roach and Chub now get into deep water, and there remain until Spring. Dace now begin, generally, to refuse a bait, and so continue till the latter end of the following February, or the beginning of March.

December.—Chub, Roach, Jack, and Pike, continue to afford the Angler a few hours' amusement and profit, if a favourable opportunity offers for him to exercise his skill; but that seldom occurs this month, because the waters are generally either flooded, too thick, or frozen up. Barbel, Carp, and Gudgeons, are now retired to deep holes, or under sheltering banks

for warmth, &c. which are their usual Winter quarters: the Eels are, also, now buried in numbers together, in deep sandy holes, or in mud, and there remain, in a torpid state, till Spring.

The fields their verdure now resign,
The bleating flocks and lowing kine
Give o'er their former play;
The feather'd tribe forget the notes,
Which joyful strain'd their vocal throats
To chaunt the matin lay.

Rules, Hints, and Observations, relative to Angling.

To prevent disputes, it is generally understood and agreed to among Anglers, (an article to this effect being always introduced in well regulated subscription waters,) that a distance the length of rod and line, or thirty feet, shall be kept between each person while angling.

The Angler should also bear in mind, that

> Good nature sets our hearts at ease,
> ——— and softens pain and sorrow.

When you have made choice of a place to fish, first plumb the depth truly, and with as little disturbance to the water as possible; let your line, with the plummet to it, remain in the water while you make and cast in the ground-bait; by which time, the line will be softened and stretched, consequently less likely to break. If the water be still, throw in small pieces of ground-bait; if a strong current, large pieces, and keep as far from the water as you can, and go quietly and slyly to work, for Fish have so many enemies that they are suspicious of every thing they see, feel, or hear; even the shaking the bank of a river (under which Fish frequently lay) will alarm Barbel, Chub, &c. and spoil the Angler's sport: this occurs, frequently, by strangers walking to and fro to see or inquire what sport, &c. and, also, when two or three Anglers are fishing near each other; therefore, avoid agitating the water, by trampling on the bank unnecessarily; drop your baited hook in the water, gently, and you will kill more Fish than three Anglers who act differently.

When you have hooked a heavy fish, use your utmost skill (for it is much easier to strike or hook than to kill or land a fish); immediately give him line, but always endeavour to keep the line from hanging slack, for, when so, the fish, by shaking

or rubbing its nose against the bottom, or any substance, weeds, &c. easily gets rid of the hook; by no means check him, unless there is some great impediment in your way, that would, almost to a certainty, break, or so entangle your line, as to leave no chance of your killing the fish; in which case, choose the least evil, by trying the strength of your tackle in bringing him to the landing net or shore; but, otherwise, keep him out of sight; when the fish stops, wind up some of the line, and lead him to the part of the water that is free from the current, weeds, &c.; keep the top of your rod elevated, and draw the fish to the right, the left, and so on till he is quite tired or spent; but, while so playing the fish, when it struggles or pulls hard, give line freely, wind it up again, and so continue to act until the fish is so exhausted as to suffer itself to be drawn without resistance, then you may venture to bring it to the landing-net: here, again, they generally make a violent plunge, on first seeing the net; if so, give line again and play him a little longer; and again bring him to the net; this course must be pursued until the fish suffers itself to be quietly netted: if you are without a landing-net or hook, you must take the fish to a shallow inlet or level shore. More fish are lost after being fairly hooked, for want of skill or patience in the Angler, than by any other means; for, if a very heavy fish be hooked with a small hook and fine tackle, by giving line, when he pulls strong, instead of pulling against him, the largest fish may be killed

with such fine tackle as would break with a fish of a pound weight, if attempted to be weighed or lifted out immediately it is hooked.

After a day's fishing, make it a rule to examine your tackle, particularly the lines and hooks, as some part of the line may, probably, be chafed and weakened by rubbing against strong weeds, the shelves under the banks, or other causes: take out any defective part and replace it by a new length; never put by your running or trolling lines until they are dry; but dry them before you wind up your winch, if possible; if not, as soon as at home, draw them off and dry them leisurely before you again wind them on the winch; also see that the hooks you have used are still sharp, and tight enough tied to use again; if not re-tie them, and occasionally rub your lines with a little sweet-oil, mutton-suet, or wax candle, to keep them from suddenly snapping, which they are apt to do when too dry.

Always keep some oil copal varnish, and when the whipping of your rod begins to show the bare silk or thread, brush it over with the varnish, and do the same with floats, the whipping of swivels, and hooks, which will long preserve them, and save expence. If your rod wants varnishing, you must do it with brown Spirit Varnish, which you may procure at the Varnish makers.

It is best to keep gut and hair in parchment, moistened with oil of almonds or salad oil, the same as musicians keep their violin-strings in.

When your line becomes ragged and chafed, rub it up and down with a piece of India Rubber, which will immediately make it smooth; and also notice, that by rubbing gut or hair which has laid in coils, with India Rubber, it instantly becomes straight, especially those pieces to which hooks are tied, as those pieces are usually kept coiled up.

Accustom yourself to use fine tackle, which will the sooner make you a skilful Angler, by greater care being requisite in using it; if you, perchance, break your tackle, do not lose your temper, but sit down and diligently repair the damage done, then begin again: recollect, hope and patience support the Fisherman.

Angling for fish, in ponds, is more fit for the inexperienced or novice in angling, than in rivers or swift streams, for, generally speaking, fish, in ponds and still waters, are not so large, strong, active, or well-fed, as fish are in rivers; they are, therefore, more easily allured and taken by a baited hook; neither is it of such material consequence to provide such fine or superior tackle, to plumb the depth so accurately, or to throw so much of choice ground-bait in; for fish in ponds, and confined waters, have not such a variety or quantity of food, as is produced or found in rivers and streams; indeed, some ponds are so over-stocked with fish, that those which are taken are generally very thin, ill-shaped, and coloured, and half-starved, particularly if there has been a long drought, the

springs being then very low, and the water in ponds the same; at such times, fish will take almost any bait that is offered. From those causes, it is apparent, that pond, or still-water fishing is best calculated for those who have had little or no practice in the art of angling, as less skill, application, or labour is required, than in rivers.

When you tie a knot, in making or repairing a line, always soak the gut or hair in warm water; if that cannot be obtained, hold it in your mouth until soft, otherwise, in tying the gut or hair while dry, it will surely break. Make yourself acquainted with every method of tying knots, fastening off, &c. by inquiring among experienced Anglers, the proprietors of fishing-tackle shops, watermen, sailors, and whip-makers. By such practical information, you will be the better enabled to tie on hooks, make up your own lines, mend a broken rod, &c. than by any written direction.

When soft rain falls, particularly in ponds, when the waters are low, or the day turns out foggy, gloomy, and close, most kinds of fish will feed freely at bottom, especially Carp and Tench; you may expect sport, also, by dipping for Trout and Chub towards dusk, but dry weather and a gentle curling breeze is best for whipping.

If very heavy rain or hail fall, especially if accompanied with a tempest or hurricane, or a very cold and strong east or north wind blowing, the Angler must not expect sport; neither will the fish take a bait late in the day, in Winter; therefore, only angle a few hours at mid-day, and exactly reverse the rule in

Summer. When clouds gather and bring on a storm, fish will leave off biting, oftentimes, some hours before the storm bursts. Thunder, lightning, and hail, are offensive to fish, and also spoil the Angler's sport.

When east wind blows or sun shines bright,
Then don't expect the Fish will bite.
If ask'd, "What wind suits angling best?
I answer, "The south, or south-west."

It generally happens in the months of July and August, that the water in the rivers, &c. is very low, and loaded, both on the surface and bottom, with slimy weeds, in consequence of which, the watery element becomes unhealthy; then the Angler must not expect the fish to bite freely until a storm or heavy rain agitate and purify the waters; immediately after which, there will be good sport in fishing for Barbel, Roach, Chub, and most kinds of fish.

The Angler should not be discouraged, or lose his taste for fishing, because he does not always meet with success; for, under the most favourable appearance of weather and water, the most experienced Angler is sometimes disappointed of sport; if he could take many fish every time he used his angle, he would find the pleasure of angling considerably diminished. A good day's sport occasionally keeps desire alive; too much, ceases to excite.

For your health's sake, never drink water out of rivers or ponds while in a perspiration: weak Brandy or Gin and water is to be preferred to Malt Liquors or water, when you are oppressed with heat or thirst, especially to

cold spring water, which should never be drank without an admixture of Wine, or a small quantity of Spirits, while the body is very warm: also be careful to keep your feet dry by wearing strong boots or shoes, which should be frequently well saturated with a mixture of chopped mutton-suet, bees'-wax, and powdered black rosin; full directions how to prepare and use this mixture will be found in page 176.

When you use the landing-net, avoid touching your line with it, or you hazard breaking the line, and losing your Fish; and always put the net to the head of the Fish.

In Angling from wharfs, docks, or very high banks, when you have hooked a heavy Fish, there is much danger of his breaking away, while you are in the act of weighing it up, under such circumstances, a landing net is absolutely necessary, but the common sort, will often be found unfit for such purpose. I therefore provide a net, twice the depth of the common sort, and put it on a hoop, and instead of a handle, a rope about ten yards long, but first, tie three pieces of cord at equal distances to the hoop, then fasten those cords to the rope: and, when I have hooked a heavy Fish, I let the net down, and guide the Fish into it.

From June till November, Fish feed or bite best in the mornings and evenings; from November to May, the middle of the day is best, unless the weather be remarkably warm or muggy; in which case, you will meet with sport from day-light till dark: and, again, during the summer, if the weather be dark and cloudy, or warm

drizzling rain fall, you may expect sport in the middle of the day, and till it be quite dark.

When you see Trout, Chub, or Salmon, leap out of the water at flies, moths, &c., and Jack, Pike, and Perch, shoot after the small Fish, steadily pursue your amusement of angling, for the Fish are then on the feed.

In fly-fishing, you will meet with the best sport after a shower of rain, that does not thicken the water, but it has little effect in bottom-fishing in rivers, unless enough falls to colour the water; the Fish then come near the sides or banks, expecting food to be washed from the land, consequently, you may reasonably expect sport, Fish being then on the feed, In still waters, and, especially, ponds, during and immediately after rain, Fish generally feed freely.

When the water is very low and bright in rivers, angle far out, and in the stream; but when the rivers are full and thick, fish in the eddies and near the bank.

When the water is low and bright, with a clear blue sky, and an unobscured sun, it is loss of time to bottom or float-fish, until within an hour of dark; for, during such state of water and sky, Fish easily discover the deception, and avoid the most tempting bait, either in Winter or Summer.

When cold winds blow, always angle in the deep holes that lie under the wind, or you will meet with little sport, for Fish are very susceptible of cold. When you fish in shallow water, and the sun is shining, endeavour to place yourself so that your shadow does not lie upon the water, or you will meet with but little success.

When you have occasion to speak to any person while angling, make it a rule, while so speaking, to keep at some distance from the water, that yourself or shadow be not seen by the Fish; also, avoid asking unnecessary questions, for though the party, to whom they are addressed, out of politeness, may return civil answers, yet, if he is an experienced Angler, and has his sport at heart, you cannot oblige him more than by making your questions and stay as short as possible. A forced conversation, and loitering about any person, while fishing, is considered extremely rude, among Anglers.

Never attempt to lift a large Fish out of the water by taking hold of any part of your line; for, with the least plunge, the Fish will surely break away, but use a landing net for the purpose: while fly-fishing, you cannot, sometimes, avoid laying hold of your line to draw the Fish near the shore, but do it with much care and caution, in the following manner; take the rod in one hand and the line in the other; draw the Fish gently on its side, with the head a little raised, if over weeds, to prevent the hook laying hold of them; then place the rod over your thigh, and lift the Fish out.

Some baits are peculiar to certain rivers and waters; also, the same baits are taken earlier in some rivers than in others, and later one year than another, by a few weeks, according to the forwardness of the season. of these things, the Angler should take notice, which will prevent much disappointment, loss of time, &c.

Careful Anglers provide themselves with a piece of cork or board, (which some cover with a piece of car-

pet,) to sit on while angling, knowing the danger of sitting on the bare ground, however dry it may seem, as from so doing, many have experienced violent cholics, inflammations in the bowels, &c. The cork or board provided for a seat, is usually about eighteen inches long, and twelve broad, which may be kept and carried in a basket, with other articles used by Anglers.

When angling in rapid heavy water, it is necessary to have a float on the line that will require many shot to sink it; cork floats are generally preferred in this case, the best being those which have the cork fixed on a very strong quill of a Goose, Swan, or Porcupine, about the middle thereof; this piece of cork should be of a long oval shape, about an inch long, and the same in circumference in the middle: this shape is far preferable to the old-shaped cork-floats, made in the form of a Windsor pear, which make a great resistance in passing through the water, consequently, a slight bite is not easily seen or struck. If a tip-capped float is used in such water, it must be very strong made, and the top thicker and stouter than the bottom, or it will not swim steady, though in moderate streams or still water, always prefer the tip-capped float, with both ends equally small, for no other shape shews a slight bite so readily.—Note. Pass the line two or three times round the float, beginning at the bottom, before you put the top cap on, which strengthens and keeps the float straight, and, also, prevents the line slipping when you strike, and thereby losing the proper depth you should fish at;

and, further, I would advise those who purchase their caps to examine and smooth the edges thereof before using them, for, generally, the edges are sharp, and will cut or fret the line; and, also, to make it a rule never to draw the line through the caps, without first taking the cap from the float, otherwise, you injure the link, and, frequently, loosen the joints of your float.

When you fish for Barbel, in deep or rapid streams, let your baited hook drag on the ground several inches; to effect which, make it a rule, when you have taken the depth, to let the hook touch the ground, and the bottom of the float the surface of the water; by so doing, when you are angling, and the float being sunk to its proper depth in the water, the baited hook will lay on the ground, and slowly drift with the current, which gives time and facility to the Fish to take the bait.

When bank-fishing for Barbel, Roach, Chub, Dace, &c. especially in rivers, do not have above two feet of line between the float and the point of the rod, and so hold your rod that the line shall hang straight, not bagged or hanging over the water, as is the case with inexperienced or careless Anglers; and also keep the top of the rod always directly over the float, moving your arm with the stream, which then allows the float and the top of the rod, as it were, to sail together; by which means, the instant a fish bites, you are enabled to strike the hook in him, from the shortness of line, and that being over the fish, for fish bite (or suck in) and blow out of their mouth what they dislike, so

quick, in a stream, that those who angle with much slack line, lose, perhaps, two bites, or fish, out of three.

When your rod has been in the rain (or, from any other cause, got wet) the joints are apt to swell, so that you cannot separate them. Application must be then made to heat; hold the joint of the rod over the flame of a lighted candle, the wet will soon begin to ooze out from between the joints, and they are then easily parted. When a candle is not to be had, a piece of lighted brown paper will do.

If, when angling for Carp, Chub, Roach, or Perch, and after having hooked a fish, he break away, little sport is to be expected in the place where you lost him (especially if a large one, and you have played him some time); for, when free from the hook, through fright and pain it rushes violently away, which alarms the others; in such case, immediately cast in a good store of ground-bait, or move to another place. When casting in ground-bait (especially for Carp and Chub) throw in small pieces, and as gently as possible, for those fish are soon alarmed, and, when so, seldom take a bait again that day.

When angling in a water that you have no local knowledge of, fish in the eddies, or at the meeting of two streams, around piles about bridges, locks, mill-tails, pools, wears, deep dark holes, and flood-gates.

When angling in a river, or any other water, for Barbel, Chub, Roach, Dace, Gudgeons, or Perch, prefer that part which has a clean, gravelly, or sandy

bottom; for those fish, unlike Carp, Tench, and Eels, are seldom found where the bottom is foul or muddy.

It is well known to old Anglers, that heavy Trout, Barbel, and other fish, may be caught, during the night, by angling; but it is hazardous, in respect to health; few can practise it with impunity, and many have suffered for years by colds, agues, and most violent rheumatic affections, brought on by following the diversion of night-angling; therefore, the serious and gentlemen anglers seldom practise it.

Laws relative to Fishing.

As an advocate for angling, I feel interested and anxious for the honour and credit of the Angler's character and conduct; I, therefore, beg his attention to a few observations, and extracts from Acts of Parliament relative to the preservation of fish and fisheries. It should be recollected, that if the Angler commit an offence or trespass, from his ignorance of the laws on the subject, he is equally liable to fine and punishment as if acting by premeditated design; for it is presumed by the magistrates of courts, that from the known publicity of the laws, every person is acquainted with their regulations in respect to the protection of property, punishment for trespass, and the like. Moreover, as reasonable beings, and accountable for our misdeeds, it surely behoves us so to regulate our conduct in pursuing our pleasures and amusements, that we in no wise lose sight of, or in-

fringe, the *Golden Rule*, that of "doing unto others as we would they should do unto us"—a strict observance of which I seriously recommend to all brother Anglers.

The most recent Act of Parliament, and which repeals all former Acts concerning fisheries, was passed Anno Septimo and Octavo, Georgii IV. Regis, Cap. 29, by which it is enacted: "That, if any person shall unlawfully and wilfully take or destroy any fish, in any water which shall run through or be in any land adjoining or belonging to the dwelling house of any person being the owner of such water; or having a right of fishery therein, every such offender shall be guilty of a misdemeanor, and, being convicted thereof, shall be punished accordingly; and if any person shall unlawfully and wilfully take or destroy, or attempt to take or destroy, any fish in any water not being such as aforesaid, but which shall be private property, or in which there shall be any private right of fishery, every such offender, being convicted thereof before a Justice of the peace, shall forfeit and pay, over and above the value of the fish taken or destroyed (if any) such sum of money, not exceeding five pounds, as to the Justice shall seem meet: provided always, that nothing herein, before contained, shall extend to any person angling in the day-time; but if any person shall by angling in the day-time unlawfully and wilfully take or destroy, or attempt to take or destroy, any fish in any such water as first mentioned, he shall on conviction before a Justice of the peace, forfeit and pay any sum not exceeding five pounds; and if in any such water

as last mentioned, he shall, on the like conviction, forfeit and pay any sum not exceeding two pounds, as to the Justice shall seem meet; and if the boundary of any parish, township, or vill shall happen to be in, or by the side of any such water as is herein before mentioned, it shall be sufficient to prove that the offence was committed either in the parish, township, or vill named in the indictment or information, or in any parish, township, or vill adjoining thereto.

And be it enacted, that if any person shall at any time be found fishing against the provisions of this act, it shall be lawful for the owner of the ground, water or fishery, where such offender shall be so found, his servants, or any person authorized by him, to demand from such offender any rods, lines, hooks, nets, or other implements for taking or destroying fish, which shall then be in his possession, and in case such offender shall not immediately deliver up the same, to seize and take the same from him for the use of such owner; provided always, that any person angling in the day-time against the provisions of this Act, from whom any implements used by Anglers shall be taken, or by whom the same shall be delivered up as aforesaid, shall by the taking or delivering thereof be exempted from the payment of any damages or penalty for such angling."

The Angler should also bear it in mind, that a trespass may be committed in cases even where he has the permission of the proprietor of the water to fish; for, in many instances, the owner of the water is not the owner

of the land through which it runs, and without permission be obtained from both, he is equally liable to an action for trespass.

Directions for the Recovery of Drowned Persons, and prevention of premature death.

Considering that many lives are lost by drowning, which might be saved, if the means recommended by the Royal Humane Society were early applied to restore suspended animation, I have inserted the rules and methods directed to be pursued in such cases by the said Society. As it is possible the Angler may have occasion to receive or give assistance in such cases, I trust I shall be excused for thus introducing the subject.

Treatment of Drowned Persons.

In removing the body to a convenient place, care must be taken that it be not bruised, nor shaken violently, nor roughly handled, nor carried over any man's shoulders with the head hanging downward, nor rolled upon the ground, nor over a barrel, nor lifted up by the heels; for experience proves, that all these methods may be injurious, and destroy the small remains of life, The unfortunate object should be cautiously conveyed by two or more persons, or in a carriage upon straw, lying as on a bed, with the head a little raised, and kept in as natural and easy a position as possible.

The body, being well dried with a cloth or flannel,

should be placed in a moderate degree of heat, but not too near a large fire. The window or door of the room should be left open, and no more persons admitted into it, than those who are absolutely necessary, as the lives of the patients greatly depend upon their having the benefit of the pure air. The warmth most promising of success, is that of a bed or blanket well heated; bottles of hot water, laid at the bottoms of the feet, to the joints of the knees, and under the arm-pits; and a warming-pan, moderately heated, or hot bricks, wrapped in cloths, should be passed over the body. The natural and kindly warmth of a healthy person lying by the side of the body, has been found, in some cases, particularly of children, very efficacious.

Should the accident happen in the neighbourhood of a warm-bath, brewhouse, bakehouse, glasshouse, or any fabric where warm lees, ashes, embers, grains, sand, water, &c. are easily procured, it would be of great importance to place the body in any of these moderated to a degree of heat little exceeding that of a healthy person; or, in Summer, the exposure to sunshine has been proved obviously beneficial. Friction with the hand, or with warm flannel or coarse cloth, so as not to injure the skin, should also be tried with perseverance, for a considerable period of time.

The subject being placed in one or other of these advantageous circumstances as speedily as possible, a bellows should be applied to one nostril, whilst the other nostril and the mouth are kept closed, and the

lower end of the prominent part of the wind-pipe is pressed backward. "The bellows is to be worked in this situation; and when the breast is swelled by it, the bellows should stop, and an assistant should press the belly upwards to force the air out. The bellows should then be applied as before; and the belly again pressed; this process should be repeated from twenty to thirty times in a minute, so as to imitate natural breathing as nearly as possible; as the trachea is always open through the glottis, air conveyed through the mouth, the nostrils being closed, would necessarily pass into the lungs. If the cartilages of the larnyx (throat) be pressed against the vertebræ, (bones of the neck) so as to close the æsophagus (gullet) and prevent the passage of the air into the stomach; and, at the same time, the mouth and left nostril be closed, and the pipe of the bellows inserted into the right nostril, the air will pass into the lungs through the wind-pipe, because that is the only opening through which it can pass; its passage into the æsophagus, or its egress through the mouth or left nostril, being prevented in the manner above described."

If there be any signs of returning life, such as sighing, gasping, twitching, or any convulsive motions, beating of the heart, the return of the natural colour and warmth, opening a vein in the arm or external jugular of the neck may prove beneficial; but the quantity of blood taken away should not be large. The throat should be tickled with a feather, in order

to excite a propensity to vomit; and the nostrils, also with a feather, snuff, or any other stimulant, so as to provoke sneezing. A tea-spoonful of warm water may be administered now and then, in order to learn, whether the power of swallowing be returned; and if it be, a table-spoonful of warm wine, or brandy and water, may be given with advantage; and not before, as the liquor might pass into the trachea before the power of swallowing returns. The other methods, should be continued, with ardour and perseverance, for two hours or upwards, although there should not be the least symptom of life.

In the application of stimulants, electricity has been recommended; and when it can be early procured, its exciting effects might be tried in aid of the means already recommended; but the electrical strokes should be given in a low degree, and gradually, as well as cautiously, increased.

A GLOSSARY

OF TECHNICAL TERMS USED AMONG ANGLERS.

Aights, small islands on the River Thames.
Angle, to *angle*, to fish with a rod, line, and baited-hook.
Angling, the art of catching Fish with a rod, to which are attached a line, hook, and bait.
Adipous-fin, the fin below the back-fin. The adipous-fin is a thick fleshy substance, found in Salmon, Trout, and Grayling.

Bag-fish, to put fish into a bag or basket, as they are caught.
Bank-fishing, angling from a bank on the side of a river, or other water.
Barbs or *wattles*.—See Wattles.
Beard, or *barb*, of a hook, is that part a little above the point, which prevents the Fish slipping off.
Bee.—See Humble Bee.
Bobber, or *Brother Bob*, nick-name for Anglers.
Bottom-fishing, angling with any bait under water, or touching the ground, with a float to the line.
Bottom, the gut at the bottom of a fly-line, to which the hook or hooks are fixed.

Cads, *Cadews*, *Straw-Worms*, or *Rough-Coats*, are a sort of maggot or grub, found incased in small pieces of sticks, rushes, &c.
Candock, or *Cammock*, (called by some, the water-lily) are large broad-leafed weeds, growing in rivers, and other fresh waters; they form an excellent harbour for fish, in the Summer.
Cane, of which fishing-rods are generally made, are bamboo, Carolina, and the sugar-cane.
Caps, pieces of coloured quills, used to keep the line to the float.
Chain-line, a long stout cord, to which, several shorter, with baited hooks, are fastened.
Cartilaginous, Fish, without a back-bone; such as the Lamprey, &c.
Chrysalis, is the first change of a maggot or gentle; they then are brown, and seem dead.

Clearing-line, is a few yards of strong small cord, to the end of which is fastened a heavy ring of lead or brass.

Come short; while fishing for Jack, Pike, Trout, or Chub, and a fish comes, seemingly very eager, towards the bait, but when near, turns or shoots away, the Angler then says, "I had a fish come at me, but he came short."

Dapping, or *Dipping*, angling with a fly on the surface of the water, by rising and letting it fall gently thereon.

Dead-lines, are lines to which one or more hooks are fastened and baited; the line is then so placed in the water, that the hooks lay on the bottom; but to those lines, no float or rod is attached; but, instead, are fastened to a peg, or a bank-runner.

Deeps are the deepest parts of the River Thames, somewhat out of the current: to make them safe harbours for fish to breed in, &c. the boatmen who live at Hampton, Shepperton, and other places in that neighbourhood, sink their old boats in rows, leaving a channel between them: in a line with this channel, they fix their boats when engaged by Anglers. The largest Barbel, and other fish, are taken in these *deeps*, for the manner in which the boats are sunk effectually protects them from every kind of net.

Devil, an artificial spinning bait for Trout, and, sometimes, used for Jack.

Dip, or *Sink* and *Draw*; angling for Jack, Pike, Trout and Perch, with a rod and line, without a float.

Dippers.—See Droppers.

Disgorger, an instrument with a forked top, about six inches long, made of bone, iron, or brass. When the Fish has swallowed the hook, the forked end of the *disgorger* is thrust down upon it, which disengages the hook, and permits it to be easily drawn out.

Dorsal-fin, the back-fin.

Drift of Anglers, is when four or more Anglers are in company a fishing, or either going to, or coming therefrom.

Drag, a piece of iron wire, with three or four hooks (without barbs) placed back to back, to which is fastened a long pack thread line. This is used to recover any part of the tackle that may be entangled in weeds, &c., or to drag in night-lines, cork-trimmers, &c.

Draw, *Slip*, or *Bow-knot*, a knot made to slip or draw out.

Dress; to *dress a fly* is to make an artificial-fly.

Droppers, or *dippers*, in artificial fly-fishing; the fly at the bottom of the line is called the stretcher; if more than one is used, those above are called *droppers* or *dippers*.

Dub; to *dub*, is to make the body of an artificial-fly.

Dubbing is the wool or mohair materials with which the body of an artificial dub-fly is made.

Dub-fly.—See Fly.

Eddies are bends or corners of rivers, where the water meets with obstruction, causing it to recoil and whirl round. Fish lie much in these spots, as the motion of the water frequently brings food out of the stream, and gives it a momentary pause, which enables them to seize it.

Feed; to *feed*,—Fish are said to be strong, or well on the *feed*, when they take the bait eagerly; also, when the Angler says the fish will feed all the year, or at such a time, he means they will then take a bait.

Follow the Rake; Gudgeons are said to follow the rake when they eagerly take the bait after the ground has been raked and loosened.

Feelers, a substance projecting from the head of some flies and insects, but more known by the name of horns.

Fishing and *angling*, synonymous terms.

Flogging the Water; the Angler is said to flog the water when he (for an unreasonable time) keeps whipping and slashing, with a fly, without having a fish rise at his bait.

Fly-fishing, to angle with a fly, natural or artificial, as a bait.

Fly, a dub-fly, an artificial fly, the body of which is large, and chiefly made of wool or mohair.

Gad, a very small Jack.

Gaf, a landing-hook.

Gentles are maggots bred from fly-blows on liver, or any putrid animal substance. When full-grown, and put among bran or dry house-sand, they cleanse themselves, and are then termed scoured; and, before they are so cleansed, they are called green gentles, in which state Fish are very fond of them. Carrion-gentles, are those which the Knackers or Horse-slayers sell, wholesale, to the dealers in gentles, and are generally used for ground-baiting.

Gorge, to *gorge*, to swallow or take the bait into the stomach.

Greaves, the sediment of melted kitchen-stuff; to be bought at the tallow-chandlers.

Grabble, to fish with a line to which several hooks are fastened, and so leaded that each hook lays on the ground: this mode of angling is termed laying on the *grabble*, and is much used in fishing for flounders, in streams where the bank slants downwards.

Gregarious, those fish are termed *gregarious* who rove about

in flocks, or numbers, together.

Ground-bait, greaves, bran, clay, gentles, &c. thrown into the water, by the Angler, for the purpose of drawing and keeping the fish about the spot or place he intends to angle in.

Gimp, silk-twist or floss-silk, laced with brass; sold at all fishing-tackle shops.

Good Fish, a good fish means a heavy or large fish.

Hackle-flies, artificial-flies, whose bodies are slender, and chiefly made of the hackle-feather. If they have not wings, they are palmers; if with wings, they are generally called palmer-hackles, or palmer-flies.

Heavy Fish, large fish.

Herle, the fine fibrous parts of feathers.

Hook, a piece of iron tempered and bent; if to catch fish with, it is barbed to prevent fish slipping off.

Hook foul, to hook foul is to hook a fish by any part outside its body, which sometimes happens by their swimming against the baited hook.

Humble or *Bumble-bee*, is the large wild bee with a black and yellow body; some have red rumps, and others variegated.

Jack, or *Pike*, names generally used as synonymous; but properly speaking, a Jack becomes a Pike after it attains more than three pounds weight, or twenty-four inches in length.

Killing under the point of the rod; the Angler is said to kill his fish under the point of his rod, when he points it upwards, and keeps a tight line, by which means the fish is kept within a small circle.

Killing-bait, that bait which the Fish are most fond of.

Kink; the line is said to *kink* or *kinkle*, when it gets entangled or twisted about the rod, or rings, &c.

Knots, water-knot, a knot that will not slip.

Kipper; a Salmon is said to be *kipper* when out of season. Salmon are also so called when smoked and dried; and when in full roe, and near spawning, they are termed *shedder*.

Landing-hook, large hook with a screw shank, to fasten in about a yard of cane or other wood. This landing-hook is more portable than a landing-net, and, therefore, preferred by some Anglers.

Landing-net, a small net extended on an iron hoop, fastened to a pole, which is very useful in landing a large Fish, to

prevent straining your rod, &c; another sort described in the Appendix.

Leash, a *leash* is three Fish of any kind.

Lip-hook, a small short-shanked hook, used to confine the mouth by passing it through the lips of a Minnow, when you mean to spin it; also used in live-bait-fishing for Jack.

Link, a *link* is a length of hair or gut.

Leather-mouthed Fish are those which have their teeth in the throat, as is the case with Barbel, Chub, Roach, Carp, Tench, Bream, Rudd, Dace, Bleak, Gudgeon, Loach, and Minnows.

Lay; to *lay*, is to put trimmers or dead-lines in rivers, ponds, &c.

Laying on the water; an Angler is said to lay on the water who is continually and daily fishing the same piece of water; this practice is considered nearly as unfair as taking Fish with trimmers.

Leger-line is a line with or without a float, fastened to a rod, sufficiently leaded, about nine inches above the hook, so that the baited hook may lie at the bottom without drifting.

Leger-lead, a flat piece of lead for Leger-fishing.

Live-bait-fishing, angling for Jack, Pike, Trout, or Perch, &c. with a small live Fish for a bait, and a float on the line.

Live-bait, when speaking of live-bait, the Angler means a living Fish used as a bait.

Mohair, goat's hair, used in making the body of artificial flies

Move a fish; in Jack fishing, when a Jack moves from among weeds or any other place without taking the bait, the Angler then says he moved a fish, but he would not feed.

Nibble; the Fish are said to *nibble* when they slightly touch the bait, but avoid taking it into the mouth.

Netting, catching Fish with a net.

Night-lines, lines that have baited hooks fastened to them, and left in the water at night to take Fish.

Not a fin: if the angler has had no success, and is asked what sport, his reply is, "I have not got a fin."

Off; Jack, Pike, and other Fish are said to be *off;* for after they have deposited their spawn, they generally leave that place, and also, when they refuse a bait, which they frequently do immediately after their spawning, the Angler then says they are *off*, that is, (off the feed), sickly, and out of season.

Palmer or *Hackle*, artificial flies made with or without wings.

Pater-noster-line, is a line of gut or twisted hair, to which are tied three or more hooks.

Peg-line, a single line made fast to a peg or a bank-runner.

Pike, see *Jack*.

Play: to *play a Fish* is to let him run a certain distance after having hooked him, gently then checking him by winding-up the line, drawing him side-ways, and also backwards and forwards, and again yielding the line to him, until he is exhausted.

Pliers, a small pair of pincers.

Plummet, a piece of lead in various shapes, for taking the depth; sold at the tackle-shops.

Pouch, to *pouch*.—See *Gorge*.

Prime, Fish are said to *prime* when they rise to the surface, and leap out of the water; when they do this, the Angler considers it a good sign, as they are then on the feed.

Punt, a broad flat-bottomed boat, large enough to hold two or three chairs; it is used in angling on the river Thames.

Rank, hooks are said to be *rank* when the points spread outwards too much; this term is particularly applied to the gorge-hook for trolling, and likewise to Eel-hooks.

Rise, the Fish are said to *rise* when they come to the surface to take a fly, or any other insect.

Run; a *run* (in trolling) means a bite.

Running-line or *Running-tackle*, the line is so called when passed from a winch, fixed on the rod, through rings, to join the baited line.

Sags, *Flags*, or *Sedges*, tall narrow flag-weeds, growing in rivers, and other waters, close to the banks; Jack love to harbour about those flags or weeds.

Scouers and *Sharps* are shallow places in rivers, with a clean sandy or gravelly bottom, on which the Fish sport, feed, rub, and roll themselves, just before they spawn; and many continue on the *scouers* during the warm or hot months.

Scouer; to *scouer worms*, is to free them from filth, and make them transparent, by putting them in damp moss, &c.

Shank of a hook, that part to which the line is tied.

Shedder Salmon.—See Kipper.

Shelf, or *shelves*, are large holes or excavations under banks of rivers, made by the violence of the water running against any particular part.

Silk Weeds, long slimy weeds growing at the bottom of rivers and canals, in the summer; those weeds spoil the Angler's bait, by hanging about it in long pieces, like silk or thread.

Sink and *draw*.—See Dip, &c.

Snatching, fishing with a stout trolling-rod and running-line, to which is affixed one or more strong hooks, without baits; the line is then cast into a place where large Fish frequent; the hooks to lay on the ground, same as in leger-Fishing; and when you see or feel a fish pass over where the hooks are, endeavour, by striking smartly, and with force, to hook it.

Spears, instruments so called for striking Salmon, Eels, Trout, Flounders, &c.

Spike or *Spud*, an iron spike made with a screw to fix in the butt of a rod.

Stalk or *Stem*, the thick part of feathers used to make the feelers or horns of artificial flies.

Stretchers.—See Droppers.

Strike; striking or hooking a Fish is done by giving the rod a sudden jerk from the wrist or arm, when the Fish has taken the bait.

Swims are deep places in rivers, where the stream is not rapid; Fish are mostly found in them in cool weather.

Take; to *take*, or *kill Fish*, to catch fish; the words catch, or caught, are seldom used by Anglers.

Tickling; when Trout are in holes, under the bank (which they are fond of retiring to), they are caught by putting your hand into those places; when you feel a Fish, gently scratch its belly until you reach the gills, then grasp it firm and lift the Fish out. The pleasurable titillation felt by the Trout while you are scratching or tickling it, prevents its attempt to leave the hole you find it in.

Tight-line; a baited line is so called when it is fastened to the angle-rod without a running-line.

Tied-up; a Fish is said to be tied up, or having tied itself up, by getting so entangled or twisted up among weeds, after he is hooked, or getting the line round piles, or posts, so that he can neither get one way or the other.

Threadling a bait is when a needle is used to put a bait on a hook; such as baiting the gorge-hook, for trolling or laying Trimmers, &c.; also worms, when used in bobbing for Eels, or laying night-lines.

Traces are lengths or pieces of gut or gimp, joined together with swivels, used when spinning a bait for Trout, trolling, &c.

Trimmers are lines fastened to bank-runners, corks, or any thing else except an angle-rod, having a hook attached to them, baited with a live Fish.

Tripping-bait is a baited hook which moves along, touching the bottom.

Troll at Home; the Angler is said to troll at home, when he casts his bait close to the banks or shore where he stands, instead of casting it far off, or from him.

Tumbling-bay is a pool of considerable depth and breadth, receiving the surplus water which falls from flood gates, erected in rivers and canals to keep up a head of water; they are numerous in the River Lea.

Turn; to *turn* a Fish, is to give him another direction, by checking him, when he is likely to get among the weeds, &c.

To *weigh a Fish out* is to lift a Fish out of the water, by the rod and line, without the aid of a landing-net

To *turn a Fish over* is when a Fish is hooked, but immediately breaks away, after the first turn or two.

Warping is tying or twisting over, in making artificial-flies.

Wattles, a fleshy substance like a worm, hanging from the mouth of Barbel, Carp, Gudgeons, and some other Fish.

Winch, a machine made of brass, on which a line is kept, made of India twist, platted silk or hair, and silk twisted.

Whip; to *whip,* or *whipping,* in fly-fishing, is casting a fly to a distance.

Whip; to *whip* is, also, to tie a hook to hair, gut, silk, &c.

White-Fish; Roach, Dace, Bleak, and Gudgeons, are called white-fish.

INDEX.

Acids, disagreeable to fish, 29.
Angling, information thereon, difficult to obtain, and why.—See the Preface,
———, preliminary discourse thereon, 1.
———, remarks on, for every month of the year, 338; rules and desultory observations relative to, 344; Acts relative to, with admonitions to Anglers, 355.
Angler not to be discouraged, and why, 350.
Angler's Guide, the Author's motive for publishing.—See the Preface.
Angle-rod, different kinds described, 5.
Ash-fly, natural and artificial, described, 282.
Author's, the, opinion of the different methods practised in trolling or fishing for Jack and Pike, 240.

Bait not to be taken out too quick, when trolling, 230.
Bank-runner described, 247.
Bannister's water on the Lea.—See Hews's.
Barbel, the name of, whence derived, 59; mode of angling for, 61; a remarkable large one often hooked at Hampton, 66; scratching for, how practised, 322.
Bass, described, and how angled for, 171.
Battersea-bridge, fishery at, described, 323,
Bee, a good bait for Chub; how to extract the sting, 286.
Blackfriars-bridge, fishery at, described, 323.
Blackwall, good angling at, how practised, &c. 80.
Beresford's fishery.—See White-house.
Bleak, where abundant, and how angled for, 37.
Bleak-Hall, fishery at, described, 330,
Blood-worms, where obtained, 301.
Blue-house, water described, 331.
Bobbing for Eels, how practised, 126.
Bobs, what, and of what use, 307.
Bottom-fishing, when and where prohibited, 314.
Boots, how to make water-proof, 176.
Bottle-racing for Jack, how and where practised, 248.
Bowerbank's water on the Lea.—See Blue-House.
Brandlings where obtained, good for Carp, Perch, &c., 300; how to keep, 305.
Bream, when and how taken, 114; their great fecundity, 115.
Brighton, angling at, described, 163.
Bromley mills, angling at, not pleasant, and why, 331.
Broxbourn, Crown, public-house, fishery and water described, 329.
Brown, boatman of Richmond commended, 322.
Browne's, Moses, verses on artificial-fly making, 262.

Bull-head.—See Miller's Thumb.
Bullock's and other brains, how used as a bait, 69.

Cads, case-worms, &c., what, and of what use, 307.
Carp, fine, but not abundant, in the Thames and Lea, how and when to angle for, 39; ground-baits for, 25; may be rendered tame, instances of, 95.
Cannon-fly, 282.
Carthagena-water, on the Lea, described, 329.
Case-worms, what, and of what use, 307.
Chain-lines for Eels described, 139.
Chertsey-bridge, fishery at, described, 315.
Cheven.—See Chub.
Chub, a bony Fish, and inferior food, 67; how to angle for, 68; season for Chub-fishing, 69; baits for, when dapping, 286.
Clap-bait.—See Bobs.
Clearing-ring, of what use, and how to use, 31.
Cockchafer, a good bait, and how to bait the hook with, 286.
Codlings, or Cod fish, how taken with the angle, 163.
Commercial Docks, angling at, 338.
Conversation, forced, disagreeable to Anglers, and why, 353.
Cook, Matthew, singular character, fond of cats, 331.
Cook's-ferry fishery.—See Bleak-Hall.
Cork, for seats, recommended, 353.
Cricket, a killing bait for Trout.—See Stone-fly, 266.
Cross-fishing, how practised, 245.
Crucian Carp, not very common in England, baits and tackle for, 39.
Crutch, or fork, to take up dead lines, also for laying trimmers, 247.

Dace, how and where to angle for, 82; remarks on, 83; baits for, when dapping, 288.
Dabbing, Dipping or Dapping, what, and how practised, 284.
Dare.—See Dace.
Ditton, fishery at.—See Thames-Ditton.
Dead-line, how made, 152.
Dock Fishing.—See Blackwall, and Surrey Canal Dock.
Dragon-fly is a large four-winged fly, by some called the large horse-stinger and peacock-fly. Artificial dragon-flies are used as a bait for Salmon, in some places, 157.
Drowned persons, how to be treated, 360.
Devils, artificial spinning-baits, fully described, 108.
Drag-hooks, and how to use, 31.
Dyer's Guide may be consulted, with advantage by the curious Angler, 263.

Eels, tackle fit for, when a rod is used, 122; how taken with dead lines, 123; bobbing for, how practised, 126; spearing and sniggling how practised, 127; mode of disabling them, when caught, 128; how to choose hooks for, 144.
Eel and Pike fishery.—See Page's water.

Feathers, how dyed yellow, for making the May-fly, 263.
Fence-months, what, and why kept, 314.
Fishing-tackle, the necessary articles for angling pointed out, with observations thereon, 1, 2, 3.

landers Weir.—See Shury's.
Floats, different sorts described, 7; and a particular sort for Jack-fishing, 228; how to make the float secure, with observations thereon, 354.
Flounders, how taken, habits of, &c., 147.
Frogs, sometimes used as a bait for Chub, Perch, and Jack, directions how to bait the hook with, &c., 49, 69, 211.
Fishing in still waters round London, with observations, 348.
Flies, artificial, list of, to kill from Christmas to Michaelmas, 280.
———— how made, 261; materials for making the green-drake, grey-drake, or cock-up-tails, 263; materials for making all kinds of flies, 274.
Fly-fishing, artificial, advantages of, 258; rods and lines for, 289; how to cast the line in, 290; natural, how practised, 284.
Fœtid light-brown fly, good bait for Chub, and when, 283.

Gag for Jack, its use, &c. explained, 225.
Gay, his lines on artificial-flies, 275; and advice to Anglers, 339.
Gentles, how produced, 295; how bred and preserved in Winter, 296; how best preserved in Summer, 297.
Grains, good ground-bait, 28.
Grasshopper, how to bait with, and dap for Chub, 286.
Greaves, how to bait with, 16; how to soak, and use for ground-bait, 27; killing bait for Barbel, 63.
Grayling not found near London, how angled for, 154.
Ground-bait, observations on, 29; how to make various kinds, 25.
Gudgeons abundant in the Lea, remarks on, 46.
———— the best bait for Jack, &c. 209; where to purchase alive, 211
Gut and hair, how to choose and stain, 5 and 6.
Groupers, how and where caught, 170.

Hackle.—See Palmer.
Hallibut, how caught, 168.
Hampton, good angling at, town and fishery described, 317.
Hampton-Court, fishery at, described, 319.
Harry, or Father long-legs, a killing bait for Chub, 287.
Hawkins, Sir John, his method of making artificial flies, 271.
Hawthorn-fly, 282.
Herle, peacock's, its use in fly-making, 283.
Hertford, town and fishery described, 325.
Hews's fishery on the Lea described, 331.
Hints and observations relative to angling, 344.
Hoddesdon, town and fishery described, 327.
Hook, method how to whip or tie one on, 30; how baited, 14; how to try their strength, &c. 11.
Huzzard-fly, when a good bait, 282.
Holmes, Mr. sells live baits all the year, 211.
Horse and Groom, Lea Bridge, fishery, &c. at, described, 332.

India rubber useful to anglers, 348.

Jacobs, Mr., sells live-baits all the year, 211.
Jack, method of trolling for, 212; takes the name of Pike when weighing more than three pounds, abundant in the Lea, natural baits for, 209; one taken by Mr. Robinson, in a remarkable man-

ner, 252; remarks on the different modes of trolling for Jack, 240; the shape, colour, nature, and habits, of Jack and Pike described, 250; how to prepare and cook, 255.

Kew-bridge, fishery at, described, 322.
Kill Fish, (to,) and land them, with remarks thereon, 345.
King's Arms water, on the Lea, fishery at, described, 326.
Kingston and Hampton Wick, fishery at, described, 320.
Kirby fish-hooks described, 6.
Knot, how to tie, 29; how to get information relative to, 35.

Landing fish, how best effected, 353.
Landing-net, how to choose, 3; another sort described, 351.
Laleham, fishery at, described, 314.
Lamprey, or Seven Eyes, described, 146.
Launce-Eel described, 169.
Laws relative to fishing, with admonitions, 357.
Lea River described, 324; subscription waters, how paid, its fishery described; an excellent school for the lovers of angling, and why, 335.
Leger-line described, 123.
Ligurs, what and how used, 247.
Lines should be even and round, method of dying hair, gut, &c. for lines, 6; should be soaked a little before you begin to fish, 76.
Lines, how to fasten to rod and to running tackle, 13.
Literature, the study of, recommended to Anglers, 340.
Live-baits, where sold, 211.
Lob-worms, where obtained; good for Trout, Eels, and Perch, 299.
London Anglers, great adepts in the art, 110.

Mackarel, how taken with a line, 167.
Malt is a good bait, in some waters, for Roach and Bream, how prepared, 24.
Man-of-war trimmer, why so named, 247.
Marsh-worms, where obtained, 299; good for Trout and Perch, 300.
Marl, or tag-tail worm, described, 302.
May-flies; green-drake, described, 263; grey-drake described, 264; stone-fly described, 264; natural May-flies, 265.
Miller's Thumb described, 120; how to angle for; bait for Eels, 121.
Miller-fly is a large white moth; it is called the miller-fly from the mealy substance about its wings and body, 286.
Minnow, a killing bait for Trout, 99; how caught, 36.
Minnow-fly, how made, &c. 110.
Mole river, described, 336.
Moss to scouer worms, where got or bought, 303.
Moon, its effects on the feeding of fish, 239.
Mullet, how to take with a fly or worm, 166.

Net for landing fish.—See landing-net.
Net to keep fish alive in when angling, 3.
New River described, 310.
Night-lines for Eels, described, 135.
Night-fishing, how practised, 125; but bad for the health, &c. 357.

Oak-fly described, 282.

Observations on paste, Salmon-spawn, &c., 21.
Orle-fly, described, when and where found, 283.
Owl-fly, is the large white moth, 286.
Ox, pith of, good bait for Chub, 69.

Page's water, on the Lea, described, 328.
Palmer, plain directions for making, 267 ; golden or silver, directions for making, 270.
Pastes, many receipts for, 18.
Pearl-Barley, how prepared and used. 24.
Perch, a bold-biting fish, tackle fit for, 17 ; remarks on, 58.
Peas, parboiled, a bait for Carp, 90.
Pike.—See Jack.
Pink.—See Minnow.
Plaice, how taken, 164.
Play a Fish, how to do it, with remarks, 345.
Plugged-float, described, 9.
Plumbing the depth, how done, 17.
Pond-fishing, observations on, 348.
Pope or Ruff, how to angle for, 119.
Prickleback, used as bait for Perch, how taken 41, used in Lincolnshire as manure, 42.
Putney-bridge, fishery at, described, 322.
Punt-fishing described, 60.

Quietness, &c. recommended, when angling, 345.

Racing for Jack.—See Bottle-racing.
Ramsgate, fishing at described, 162, and 165.
Red-worms, where obtained, good for various fish, 300.
Richmond, fishing at, described, 321.
Rivers, several described, 336.
Roach, mode of angling for, 73 ; best mode of cooking large ones, 80.
Rod.—See Angle-rod.
Rod, how to fasten the line to it, 13; how to mend, 33; how to varnish, 347.
Rudd, indifferent food ; tackle for, 117.
Rules, hints, and observations, relative to angling, 344.
Rough Coat.—See Cads.
Royalty or Colney fishery, described, 338.
Ruff.—See Pope.
Rye-house fishery described, 326.

Salmon-spawn, how preserved for bait, 22.
Salmon, how angled for, 156 ; habits of, remarks on, 157.
Salt-water Fish, how caught with the angle, 158.
Sand-Eel described, 169.
Seats of cork, &c. recommended, 353.
Scratching for Barbel, how practised, 322.
Seven Eyes.—See Lamprey.
Shepherd's-water on the Lea, described, 326.
Shepperton, fishery at, described, 316.
Shoes mixture to make them waterproof, 176.
Shotting a line, how done, with a caution, 11.
Shrimps, good bait for Perch, &c., how to bait with, 43.

Shury's subscription-water on the Lea, described, 330.
Skeggar caught by whipping, in the Thames, supposed to be young Salmon, 315.
Smelts, how to angle for, and habits of, described, 149.
Snails a bait for Eels, 138.
Snaring Jack and Pike, how practised, 249.
Snapper, how and where caught, 170.
Sniggling for Eels, how practised; worms proper for, 127.
Sorrel, a colour for single-hair lines; how to dye that colour, 6.
Snowden's, late Sparrey's, Horse and Groom, Lea-bridge.—See Horse and Groom.
Spawn of Barbel not wholesome, 60.
Spearing Eels, how practised, 127.
Spoon, useful to the Angler, 3.
Staines, fishery at, described, 314.
Stickleback.—*See* Prickleback.
Stone-Loach, how and where taken, 40.
Stone-fly, artificial, 264; natural, 266.
Stour-river contains many Trout, Roach, Eels, &c. 336.
Subscription-waters, rules, &c., the annual sum paid, 325.
Sunbury, bank-fishing at, 317.
Swan and Pike on the Lea, remarks on, 330.
Swim, partiality of Anglers for a particular one, 59.
Summer months, the time proper for and improper to angle, and why, 303.
Surry Canal Docks, described, 338.
Swivels, of what use in angling, 201.

Tackle should be examined and repaired during winter, 339; should be examined after Fishing, 347.
Tench, fine fish, but scarce near London; baits for, 84; instance of the forbearance of other fish towards them, 87; how to angle for in ponds, 93.
Thames, the river and its fishery described, 313; angling in, when prohibited, 314; when best time to fish in, 323.
Thames-Ditton, fishery at, described, 319.
Tip-capped float, described, 7.
Trimmers described, how made, how baited, 247.
Tripping-bait, what, 98; and how angled with, 99.
Trimmer-lines, composition for preserving, 200.
Trolling, prefatory remarks thereon, 175; how to bait the gorge-hook, 178; snap-hooks, how to bait, 190; trolling-rods and lines, how to choose and fit, 205; how to cast the bait, and kill Jack or Pike, 212; live bait-fishing, &c. &c. 227.
Trolling lines, composition for preserving, 200.
Trout, how to angle for, 97; cross-fishing for, a destructive way, 245; hook for trolling for, represented, 101; different Trout-streams near London described, 104; directions for baiting a Minnow for spinning, artificial devils to be preferred, 109; remarks on Trout, 112.
Twickenham, good fishing at; fishery at, described, 320.
Turbot, how taken with hook and line, 165.

Umber.—See Grayling.

Uxbridge, Trout-fishing at, 104.

Varnish, the sort used for floats, &c. 347.

Waltham-Abbey, fishery at, described, 330.
Walton, fishery at, described, 317.
Walton, Izaak, the Author's opinion of, 111; and the modern editions of the Complete Angler, 112.
Walton and Cotton's Angler, illustrations suitable to any Edition, 112.
Ware, on the River Lea, 325.
Wasps, maggot of, excellent bait for Trout, 307; either used at dapping or tripping, 285.
Water-cricket.—*See* Cricket and Stone-fly.
Wax, shoe-makers', how used to wax silk for tying on hooks, 50.
Weather proper and unfit for angling described, 349 and 351.
Westminster-bridge, fishery at, described, 323.
White-house water and fishery described, 334.
Whipping for Trout, Chub, &c. 288.
Wheat, parboiled, a good bait for Roach, 23.
Winch, a multiplying one to be preferred, how to fasten to the rod, 13.
Woodcock-fly, described, 282.
Worms, useful bait, 296; how to preserve a stock of, 305; worms should be carried with you when Roach-fishing, and why, 306.
Worms, how procured on the sea-shore, good bait for Whiting, &c., 302.